



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

HN 3HVI N

# THE BEGINNER'S CÆSAR



HARRISON D. CANNON

Carlton Burr.

Carlton Burr.

Carlton Burr.

Carlton Burr.

Carlton Burr.

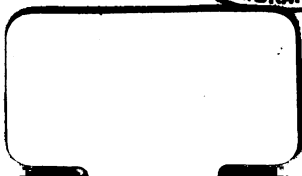
Carlton Burr.

Carlton Burr.

Carlton Burr.

Carlton Burr.

Carlton Burr.



**Carlton Burr.**

Carlton Burr  
Latin

1900 reg.  
1901 reg.

**Carlton Burr.**



*An open door to Cæsar*

THE  
BEGINNER'S CÆSAR

BEING MAINLY THE SIMPLIFIED TEXT OF THE  
BELLUM HELVETICUM OF THE COMMENTARIES

BY  
HARRISON DICKINSON CANNON

*Ph.B., Cornell University*

Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged



NEW YORK CITY  
HINDS AND NOBLE, PUBLISHERS  
31-33-35 WEST 15TH STREET  
1903

57-2416



Copyright, 1900,  
By HARRISON D. CANNON.

---

Copyright, 1903,  
By HINDS AND NOBLE.

**TO MY DAUGHTER  
REGINA  
THIS BOOK IS  
LOVINGLY INSCRIBED**





## PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION

THIS book is the outcome of a close personal experience, both as pupil and teacher, of the difficulties attendant upon the initiation of classes in the reading of Cæsar.

The late report of the Committee of Twelve of the American Philological Association but verifies a matter of general repute among the profession in these words: "Some opposition has been made to the study of Cæsar as being too difficult for students in the second year of the course. *But to omit Cæsar would be a retrograde step in the framing of Latin programs.*" But despite the fact that they hereby state a truth of common knowledge, the words exert a new and powerful force by the prestige of the honorable members of that committee. Educational influences which come from such men as constituted that board are resistless on whatsoever they may be brought to bear. Lovers of the classics, and especially of the cause of Cæsar for the service it has so long performed, need have no anxiety. For those influences are now being directed full in favor of maintaining, nay in advancing, the classics as essential factors in the education of to-day. And statistics witness the success of these efforts for classicism. Figures show that in the last nine years, 1890-'99, the study of Latin "has gained at a rate greater than that of any other secondary-school study." As a means of comparison, the report shows *in Latin an increase of 174 per cent, in German 131, in Greek 94, in Chemistry 65.* "It

is encouraging to friends of classical study to notice that in 1898 almost one-half (49.44 per cent) of all the pupils enrolled in the secondary-schools were engaged in the study of Latin."

From this it is clear that the question before us is not *what*, but *how*. Cæsar must remain. But how is it to be made easier for beginners? This book, embodying an analytic method in the interpretation of the text, is the author's answer to the question.

The Committee suggests that first-year classes read twenty to thirty pages of easy Latin toward the close of the year. It has been difficult for teachers to obtain such matter—at once easy and consecutive and pertinent to the immediate end in view. The aim of this book is to supply it. The treatment of the pupil during this transition is important. From now on his attention should be drawn closely to the systematic study of connected discourse, at first simple and concise, but gradually approaching and finally reaching the level of Cæsar's own. And in connection with this reading, the pupil is in a condition to profit by a thorough drill from the text in all the mechanism of word-forms — parts, conjugation, declension, comparison — syntax, translation at sight and hearing, and, above all, *reproduction of the Latin*, after the method which has come down to us from that most renowned teacher of his age, Johann Sturm of Strasburg. The lesson-book should be laid aside. It has done its work. With the teacher as a guide, the student needs no other print than the book now before him.

Attention need hardly be called to the striking feature of the work. By a careful method of analysis the reader

is led gradually and easily through the difficulties of Cæsar's complex constructions to the text, *toto in se*, of the Commentaries.

The author's one purpose is to join the multitude of lovers of classic literature in their effort to open the way more and more to the fountain-head of those forces that are still moulding the very life of the world.

## PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION

THE success of the earlier edition of *The Beginner's Cæsar* warrants its reappearance in this new and enlarged form. Many extra features have been added, and original parts extended.

An examination of the text will justify the Author's choice of the motto — *repetitio mater est studiorum*. The pupil is led step by step through that which becomes familiar by repetition to the *verbatim* sentence of Cæsar.

Throughout the text are exegetical references to the appropriate rules and examples. These rules and examples the pupil should at once memorize. This done, he has not the foundation alone, but much of the superstructure of syntax of his entire future course in Latin.

The English-Latin composition consists of two parts, the one preferably for oral recitation, the other for careful written work. Both being based upon the text, they will require no special vocabulary. The one part may be found too easy for older classes, the other too difficult for younger pupils. Governed by the needs of the class, the tactful teacher will find the golden mean.

The *Notes* are intentionally full. The purpose has been constantly in mind to make them interesting and attractive and thus stimulating. Through them, supplemented by pleasing fact and anecdote from the teacher's fund of information and experience, the pupil may be brought to the appreciation and enjoyment of classical study. Let

the class be attentive to these Notes every day. Then the habit of critical study will be formed, and from it will develop a facility of comprehension that will be productive of good to them in all they do. We vilify classical training in our condemnation of that which is classical in name only, not in spirit and method. If such study fail of its purpose of culture, the fault lies rather in manner than matter. To gain the full culture-value of the study of the classics, we must combine their historical treatment with *thorough* drill in construction and syntax. The one vivifies the past, making it real as the living present; the other sharpens the mental faculties, making us more the man. The one makes for refinement, the other for discipline — a combination which renders the classics the best mould of life in our school-rooms to-day.

Thanks are due Professors Burr and De Garmo of Cornell University, J. Edward Banta, Superintendent of the Binghamton city schools, Frank D. Blodgett of the chair of Latin and Greek in the State Normal School of Oneonta, New York, and to the many High School and Academic teachers everywhere, — all of whom have spoken of the book in the heartiest and kindest manner and thus lent encouragement to this larger work, — to all these the Author wishes to extend his most sincere gratitude.

To Mr. Archibald A. Maclardy, the author of "The Completely Parsed Cicero and Virgil," I wish to publicly express my appreciation of the professional service rendered me. His critical examination of the first edition of my book, and his helpful and encouraging suggestions, have done much toward this revision.

To my Publishers, too, who have given me full rein,

**X**      *PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION*

who have made absolutely no restrictions, in the enjoyment of which unusual privilege I have inserted every sort of matter of interest, value, and convenience that any teacher can reasonably ask, my thanks and the thanks of all educators are due.

May old friends recognize "The Beginner's Cæsar" in its new dress, and new friends receive it kindly.

HARRISON DICKINSON CANNON.

SEPTEMBER 1, 1903.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
I. INTRODUCTION: CÆSAR IN GAUL . . . . .	xiii
II. OUTLINE OF CÆSAR'S LIFE . . . . .	xvii
III. MAP OF GAUL . . . . .	xxi
IV. SIMPLIFIED AND VERBATIM TEXT OF THE "BEL- LUM HELVETICUM," CHAPTERS I-XXIX . . .	1-48
V. ENGLISH-LATIN EXERCISES . . . . .	49
VI. RULES OF SYNTAX . . . . .	75
VII. NOTES . . . . .	101
VIII. TABLES OF DECLENSION AND CONJUGATION . . .	135
IX. VOCABULARY . . . . .	167





## CÆSAR IN GAUL

To the student of Cæsar, the politician, there is much in his life previous to his proconsular appointment to Gaul that is of essential value. In fact, in this first half of that great man's life, the student will find his greatest interest, if he aims to know the rungs in that ladder of ambition by which he climbed to the highest honor in the power of the Roman Republic to bestow.

To the student of Cæsar, the general and writer of the "Commentaries," Plutarch gives the cue when he says that with his work in Gaul Cæsar began a new life, following lines of action different from the old. With the beginning of this changed activity, in this second act, as it were, of his play of life, we find our interest as readers of the Gallic wars.

By the *lex Vatinia*, the people gave to Cæsar, in B. C. 58, the government of Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum for five years, with three legions. The Senate immediately added Transalpine Gaul and another legion. Scarcely had he completed arrangements for departure, when word was brought to him of disturbances among the tribes in the eastern portion, now Switzerland. It was the middle of March. Cæsar set out instantly. By the first of April, B. C. 58, he had begun his marvelous military career, and by the following June had won his first campaign. The story of this achievement is given in the first twenty-nine

chapters of Book I, the simplified and *verbatim* text of which the student is now about to read. This first campaign is called the "Helvetian War," from the name of the nation which occasioned it. Its details the student will best gather from the careful perusal of Cæsar's account.

A considerable part of the subsequent history of Cæsar in Gaul will be read in the pupil's future course. During those eight years, he took eight hundred cities by assault, conquered three hundred tribes, and fought pitched battles at different times with three millions of men, two-thirds of whom were either killed or sold into slavery. His was pioneer work for Rome in the northwest; for his army was the first to penetrate Gaul and Britain, to cross into the German wilds, to sail the Atlantic—and the dash and daring of it all wrought such fear in the barbarians that they kept aloof from Rome for centuries.

As we peruse the account of his first campaign, we shall begin to feel the ability, energy, and tact of the man, which feeling will grow, as we read on, into a full sense of his gigantic genius. Then with his admirers in all ages and nations we shall join in sincere homage. As a warrior and a general we shall behold him not in the least inferior to the greatest commanders the world has ever produced; for, whether we compare him with the leaders of the past or the present, he bears away the palm. "In the difficulty of the scenes of action, in the extent of the countries subdued, in the number and strength of the enemies overcome, in the savage manners and treacherous disposition of the people he humanized, in mildness and clemency to his prisoners, in bounty and munificence to his troops, in the

number of battles won and enemies killed," finally, in all that tests the skill and fearlessness of a military commander, Cæsar stands at the head of the famous warriors of all time.

However, it is but as a wondrous warrior — not a man — that we admire him; for in every act we cannot but feel the covert purpose to become master of Rome at whatever cost, to "bestride the narrow world like a Colossus," then to be oblivious to the petty men beneath his huge legs, as *Cassius* expresses it in the play. Try as we may to evade it, the thought intrudes itself upon us that in his favors and charity to the people and to his soldiers, and in mercy to his enemies, he was swayed more by reason than affection. Thus, mingling with our awe of his incredible power, which in a noble nature incarnated would turn our awe to love, comes the depressing consciousness that the Gallic campaigns were but links in the fetters. There is evidence of a reprehensible duplicity in Cæsar's conduct at this period: he was conquering his enemies with the arms of the Roman Republic, and gaining the Republic by the money of his enemies. His mind was always on state intrigues. During brief respites from active fighting, "great numbers came from Rome to pay their respects to him, and he sent them all away satisfied; some laden with presents, others happy in hope. He sent to Rome enormous sums of gold to be expended in the erection of temples, theatres, and other public structures, and in the celebration of games and shows, that should rival in magnificence those of Pompey" (*Plutarch and Myers*).

We cannot but regret that, unlike *Brutus*, Cæsar loved

Rome less and Cæsar more. Thus in his chequered life  
he found

“tears for his love; joy for his fortune; honor for his valor; and  
death for his ambition.”—(BRUTUS, in Shakespeare's *Julius Cæsar*).

## OUTLINE OF CÆSAR'S LIFE\*

(ACCORDING TO PLUTARCH)

1. Born July 12, 100 B. C., of a patrician or noble family.
2. Priest of Jupiter (*Flamen Dialis*).
3. Alliance with Marius, leader of the popular party (*Populares*).
4. Further alliance with popular party by marriage with Cornelia, daughter of Cinna, B. C. 83.
5. Troubles with Sulla, leader of the patrician or aristocratic party (*Optimates*). Proscribed.
6. Exile among the Sabines and across the sea; the incident of the pirates.
7. Studies rhetoric and oratory at Rhodes.
8. Returns to Rome and impeaches Dolabella, a rapacious provincial governor.
9. Military Tribune, B. C. 74.
10. Funeral oration of his aunt, the wife of Marius; restoration of the images of Marius against the ban.
11. Further hardiness and independence of spirit shown in his young wife's panegyrics.
12. Quæstor in Spain, B. C. 68.

\* The pupil should learn this outline, and from the many available sketches of Cæsar's life should expand the outline to a full account. Besides the encyclopædic articles every library should have a copy of Plutarch's "Lives"; Froude's "Cæsar, a sketch"; Dodge, in the "Series of Great Captains"; Fowler's "Julius Cæsar"; the histories of Merivale, Mommsen and Myers; various excellent school editions of the Commentaries; and above all, if possible, the elaborate work of Napoleon III.

13. Curule Aedile, B. C. 65; his enormous personal expenditures and debts; the incident of the new gold-embossed and engraved statues and trophies of Marius.

14. Contest for the pontificate; the proffered bribe; incident of Cæsar and his mother.

15. Pontifex Maximus, B. C. 63.

16. Cæsar and the conspiracy of Catiline; the enmity of Cato; Cicero's body-guard; in the senate a few days later; Cato's artifice, B. C. 63.

17. Prætor, B. C. 62.

18. Domestic troubles; sacrilege of Clodius.

19. Proprætor in Spain, B. C. 61; his debts; alliance with Crassus; envies the achievements of Alexander the Great; beginning of his military career; wins the title of *imperator*.

20. Return to Italy; his dilemma; Cato's opposition, and result.

21. The Triumvirate, B. C. 60; purpose and result; Cato's wisdom and foresight.

22. Consul, B. C. 59; "Less a consul than a seditious tribune"; the incident of the trio in the Senate; how the laws were passed.

23. Cæsar in Gaul, 58-50 B. C. "Here we begin, as it were, a new life."

24. Pompey made "sole consul," B. C. 52; "Monarchy the only cure, Pompey the gentlest physician."

25. Cæsar asks for continuance of his commission in Gaul; deliberations in the Senate; Cæsar's liberal offer; outrage upon his envoys.

26. Meditation on the banks of the Rubicon; "The die is cast!" B. C. 49.

27. Civil war ; flight of Pompey and the consuls.
28. Conquers Pompey at Pharsalus, B. C. 48.
29. Cæsar in Egypt, B. C. 47.
30. Battle of Thapsus, B. C. 46.
31. Dictator for ten years, B. C. 46.
32. Battle of Munda, B. C. 45.
33. Imperator for life.
34. The conspiracy. Assassinated, March 15, B. C. 44.

“ O mighty Cæsar ! dost thou lie so low ?  
Are all thy conquests, glories, triumphs, spoils,  
Shrunk to this little measure ? Fare thee well.”

(MARK ANTONY over Cæsar's body).





monarch

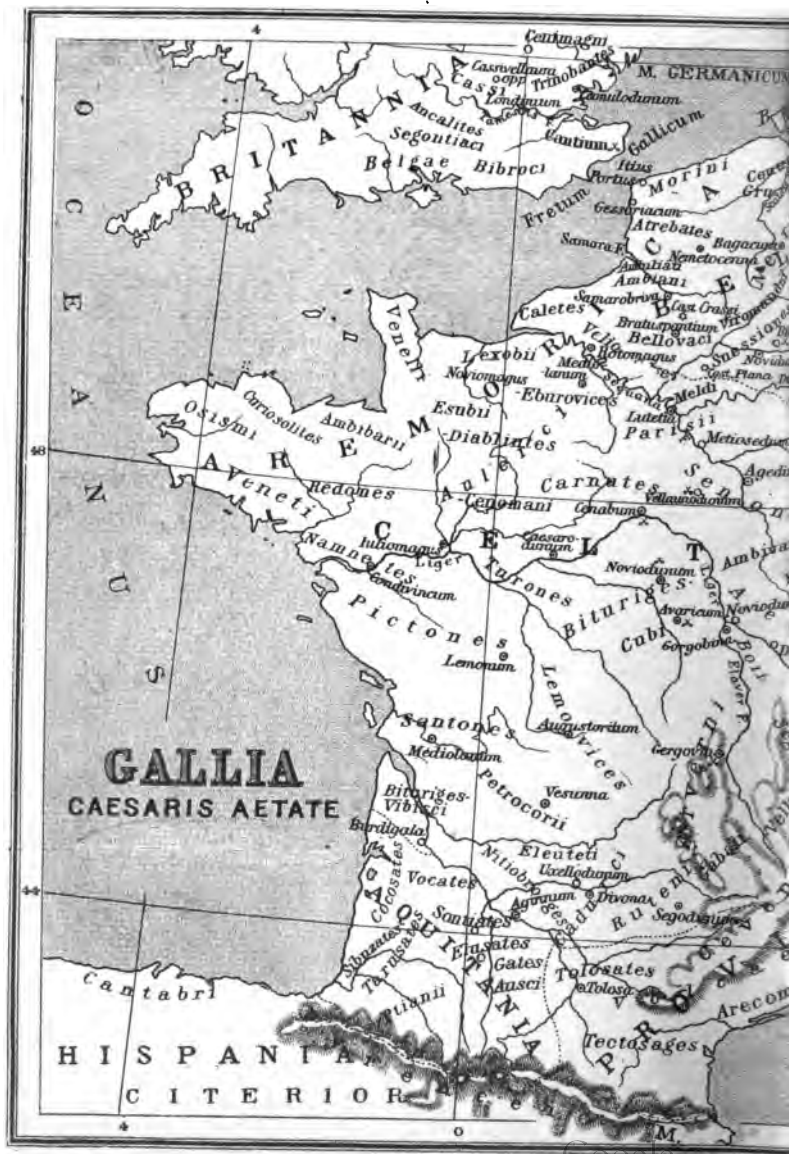
monarch

monarch

monarch

monarch

monarch







## THE BEGINNER'S CÆSAR

### 1. THE DIVISIONS OF GAUL

GALLIA est omnis divisa in partēs trēs. Quārum partium<sup>5</sup> ūnam \* partem incolunt Belgae. Aliam partem incolunt Aquitānī. Tertiam incolunt Galli. Galli linguā<sup>38</sup> ipsōrum *Celtae*<sup>32</sup> appellantur. Celtae nostrā linguā *Galli* appellantur. Hi omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus<sup>38</sup> inter sē differunt. Garumna flūmen<sup>79</sup> Gallōs ab Aquitānis<sup>66</sup> dividit. Mātrona et Sēquana flūmina<sup>79</sup> Gallōs ā Belgis dividunt.

#### *Characteristics of the Gallic people*

Hōrum<sup>5</sup> omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū<sup>66</sup> atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt. / Ad eōs,<sup>38</sup> mercātōrēs minimē saepe commeant. Mercātōrēs ea minimē saepe importānt, quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent. Belgae proximī<sup>78</sup> sunt Germānis,<sup>19</sup> quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum (= cum quibus<sup>38</sup>) continenter bellum gerunt.

Quā dē causā, Helvētīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs praecēdunt. / Helvētīi reliquōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod cum Germānis contendunt. Ferē cotidiānis<sup>34</sup> proeliis cum Germānis contendunt. Helvētīi suis finibus<sup>37</sup> Germānōs

\* The figures throughout the text refer to *Rules of Syntax*, beginning at page 75.

prohibent. Helvēti in Germānōrum finibus<sup>30</sup> bellum gerunt.

*Boundaries of each nation*

6) Una pars eōrum initium capit ā<sup>40</sup> flūmine Rhodanō. Eam partem Gallōs<sup>30</sup> obtinēre<sup>40</sup> dictum est. 2 Continētur Garumnā<sup>32</sup> flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum. 3 Attingit flūmen Rhēnum. 4 Attingit etiam ab Sēquanis et Helvētiis flūmen Rhēnum. 5 Vergit ad septentrionēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs finibus Galliae oriuntur. 6 Pertinent ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēni. 7 Spectant in septentrionēm et orientem solē. 8 Aquitania ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pyrēnaeos montēs<sup>19</sup> pertinet. 9 Pertinet ad eam partem Ōceni, quae est ad Hispāniam.<sup>77</sup> 10 Spectat inter occāsum solis et septentrionēs.

NOTE: After each simplified chapter will follow a *verbatim* copy of the corresponding chapter from the "Commentaries."

C. IULII CAESARIS  
DE BELLO GALLICO

COMMENTARIUS PRIMUS

B. C. 58

I. Gallia est omnis divisa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitāni, tertiam qui ipsōrum linguā

Description of Celtae, nostrā Galli appellantur. Hi omnes the divisions linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. and inhabitants of Gaul. Gallōs ab Aquitānis Garumna flūmen, ā Belgis Mātrona et Sēquana dividit. Hōrum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercā-

tōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important; proximique sunt Germānis, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānis proeliis cum Germānis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eōs prohibent aut ipsi in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanis et Helvētīis flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentrionēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentrionem et orientem sōlem. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs mōntēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentrionēs.

67 The conspiracy.

## 2. CONSPIRACY OF ORGETORIX

Apud Helvētīōs nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorix. Orgetorix fuit longē ditissimus. Is coniūratiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit. Is, rēgni<sup>4</sup> cupiditate<sup>29</sup> inductus, coniūratiōnem fēcit. Is, Mārcō Messālā et M. Pisōne cōsulibus,<sup>48</sup> civitatī<sup>28</sup> persuāsit ut<sup>48</sup> dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis exirent.<sup>49</sup> Dixit: perfacile esse,<sup>67</sup> tōtius Galliae imperiō<sup>38</sup> potiri.<sup>76</sup> Perfacile esse, imperiō potiri, cum virtūte<sup>38</sup> omnibus<sup>13</sup> praestarent.<sup>51</sup>

### *Natural limits of Helvetia*

Helvētīi loci nātūrā undique continentur. Hōc<sup>29</sup> facilius eis persuāsit ut dē suis finibus exirent. Helvētīi ūnā ex

685 Sp. ...  
700 ...



parte<sup>40</sup> flūmine Rhēnō<sup>79</sup> continentur. Rhēnus lātissimus<sup>78</sup> et altissimus est. Is agrum Helvētium ā Germānis<sup>80</sup> dividit. Helvētīi alterā ex parte monte Iūrā continentur. Iūra, mōns altissimus, inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs est. Helvētīi tertiā (ex parte) lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō continentur. Rhodanus prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dividit.

*The results of their confinement*

Hīs rēbus<sup>81</sup> fiēbat ut minus lātē vagārentur.<sup>40</sup> Hīs rēbus fiēbat ut minus facile finitimis<sup>82</sup> bellum inferre<sup>74</sup> possent. Helvētīi cupidi<sup>83</sup> bellandi<sup>7</sup> erant. Quā ex parte Helvētīi, hominēs<sup>79</sup> bellandi cupidi, māgnō dolōre<sup>84</sup> afficiēbantur. Sē angustōs finēs habēre<sup>76</sup> arbitrābantur. Prō multitudīne hominum,<sup>8</sup> angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur. Prō glōriā belli atque fortitudinis, finēs angustōs esse arbitrābantur. Finēs in longitūdinem milia<sup>85</sup> passuum<sup>8</sup> ducenta et quadrāgintā patēbant.<sup>96</sup> In lātitudinem centum et octōgintā patēbant.



## CHAPTER II OF CÆSAR'S TEXT

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pisōne cōsulibus, rēgnī cupiditatē inductus coniūratiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et civitatī persuāsit ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis exirent: perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri. Id hōc facilius eis persuāsit, quod undique loci nātūrā Helvētīi continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Hel-

Orgetorix  
persuades  
the Helve-  
tians to in-  
vade Gaul.

vētium ā Germānis dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dividit. His rēbus fiēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimīs bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō multitudīne autem hominum et prō glōriā belli atque fortitudinis angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitudinem milia passuum CCXL, in lātitudinem CLXXX patēbant.

---

### 3. PREPARATIONS OF THE HELVETIANS

His rēbus adductī sunt. Auctōritāte Orgetorigis<sup>8</sup> permōti sunt. His rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōti, cōstituērunt ea comparāre,<sup>74</sup> quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent.<sup>60</sup> Cōstituērunt māximum numerum iūmentōrum<sup>5</sup> coēmere.<sup>74</sup> Cōstituērunt quam<sup>73</sup> māximum numerum carrōrum coēmere. Cōstituērunt quam māximās sēmentēs facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppetet. Cōstituērunt pācem et amicitiam cum proximīs civitatibus cōfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās<sup>71</sup> biennium satis est. Biennium sibi<sup>18</sup> satis esse dūxērunt. In tertium annum<sup>25</sup> profectiōnem lēge<sup>83</sup> cōfirmant. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur.

#### *Orgetorix enlists other chiefs*

Is sibi<sup>18</sup> lēgatiōnem ad civitatēs<sup>25</sup> suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō<sup>12</sup>, ut rēgnum in civitatē suā occupāret.<sup>48</sup> Casticus, Sēquanus,<sup>79</sup> filius Catamantāloedis erat.

Pater Castici rēgnum in Sēquanis multōs<sup>33</sup> annōs obtinuerat. Ā senātū<sup>30</sup> populi Rōmāni amicus<sup>32</sup> appellātus erat. Rēgnum in Sēquanis pater Castici ante habuerat. Itemque, Orgetorix Dumnorigī, qui plēbi<sup>19</sup> acceptus erat, persuāsit ut idem cōnārētur. Orgetorix ei<sup>11</sup> filiam suam in mātrimonium dat. Dumnorix Aeduu frāter<sup>32</sup> Divitiāci erat. Dumnorix eō tempore<sup>41</sup> principātum in civitāte obtinēbat.

### *His argument*

Cōnāta perficere<sup>16</sup> perfacile est. Illis<sup>11</sup> probat perfacile factū<sup>18</sup> esse cōnāta perficere. Perfacile esse probat, propterea quod imperium suae civitātis<sup>4</sup> obtenturus esset.<sup>54</sup> Nōn esse<sup>67</sup> dubium quin<sup>30</sup> tōtius Galliae<sup>5</sup> Helvētiī plūrimum possent. Orgetorix cōnfirmit sē rēgna conciliātūrum esse. Sē suis cōpiis suōque<sup>32</sup> exercitū illis rēgna conciliātūrum esse cōnfirmit. Hāc ōrātiōne<sup>32</sup> Casticus et Dumnorix adducti sunt. Hāc ōrātiōne adducti, inter sē fidem<sup>97</sup> et iūs iūrandum dant. Spērant sēsē tōtius<sup>35</sup> Galliae potiri posse. Rēgnō occupātō, sēsē tōtius Galliae potiri spērant. Per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs, sēsē Galliae potiri posse spērant.



## CHAPTER III OF CÆSAR

3. His rēbus adducti et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōti cōstituērunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximū numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam māximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmenti suppeteret, cum proximis civitātibus pācem et amicitiam cōnfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dū-

**Preparations  
of the Hel-  
vetians.**

xērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur. Is sibi lēgatiōnem ad civitatēs suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantāloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cūius pater rēgnū in Sēquanis multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amicus appellātus erat, ut rēgnū in civitatē suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorigi Aeduō, frātri Diviciāci, qui eō tempore principātum in civitatē obtinēbat ac māximē plēbi acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque filiam suam in mātrimonium dat. Perfacile factū esse illis probat cōnāta perficere, proptereā quod ipse suae civitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: nōn esse dubium, quin tōtius Galliae plūrimū Helvētīi possent; sē suis cōpiis suōque exercitū illis rēgna conciliātūrum cōfirmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adducti inter sē fidem et iūsiūrandum dant, et rēgnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtius Galliae sēsē potiri posse spērant.

**Orgetorix  
conspires  
with chiefs  
of other  
tribes for su-  
premacy.**



*Miles*

## BETRAYAL AND DEATH OF ORGETORIX

4. Orgetorix is betrayed and arrested. On the day of the trial he assembles all his retinue at the court and through them he escapes. The government, however, is persistent, and Orgetorix in despair commits suicide.

Ea rēs ēnūntiāta est. Rēs per indicium<sup>99</sup> ēnūntiāta est. Ea rēs est Helvētiis<sup>11</sup> per indicium ēnūntiāta. Orgetorigem<sup>36</sup> causam dicere<sup>76</sup> coēgērunt. Mōribus<sup>38</sup> suis eum coēgērunt. Mōribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt. Poenam<sup>36</sup> sequi<sup>76</sup> oportēbat. Eum damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat, ut igni<sup>33</sup> cremārētur.<sup>49</sup> Orgetorix suam familiam coēgit. Diē<sup>41</sup> cōstitūtā Orgetorix suam familiam undique coēgit. Suam familiam, ad<sup>77</sup> hominum mīlia decem, coēgit. Diē cōstitūtā causae dictionis,<sup>4</sup> Orgetorix ad<sup>77</sup> iūdicium suam familiam undique coēgit. Omnēs clientēs eōdem condūxit. Clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum<sup>5</sup> māgnū numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit.

Per eōs,<sup>99</sup> nē<sup>48</sup> causam diceret, sē ēripuit. Cīvitas iūs suum exsequi cōnābātur. Cīvitas, ob eam rem incitāta, armis<sup>33</sup> iūs suum exsequi cōnābātur. Magistrātūs multitudinem hominum ex<sup>40</sup> agris cōgēbant. Orgetorix mortuus est. Cum cīvitas iūs suum exsequi cōnārētur<sup>33</sup> multitudinemque hominum ex agris magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est. Suspiciō nōn abest, quīn<sup>30</sup> ipse sibi<sup>13</sup> mortem cōnsciverit.<sup>30</sup> Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētīi arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnsciverit.

## CHAPTER IV OF CÆSAR

4. Ea res est Helvëtiis per indicium enūtiāta. Mōribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere cōgērunt: dam-nātum poenam sequi oportēbat ut igni cremārē-tur. Diē cōstitutā causae dictiōnis Orgetorix Orgetorix is tried for conspiracy but escapes. His sudden death. ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem, undique cōgēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum māgnū numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam diceret, sē ēripuit. Cum civitās ob eam rem incitāta armis iūs suum exsequi cōnārētur, multitudinemque hominum ex agris magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvëtii arbitrantur, quā ipse sibi mortem cōnsciverit.



## 5. PLANS OF EXODUS MATURE

Nihilō <sup>81</sup> minus, Helvëtii id, quod cōstituerant, <sup>82</sup> facere cōnantur. <sup>83</sup> Post Orgetorigis mortem, id facere cōnan-tur, ut ē finibus suis exeant. Ubi <sup>49</sup> iam sē <sup>36</sup> ad eam rem parātōs <sup>83</sup> esse arbitrātī sunt, <sup>49</sup> oppida sua omnia incendunt. Oppida sua numerō <sup>38</sup> ad <sup>77</sup> duodecim erant. Vicōs ad quadringentōs incendunt. Reliqua privāta aedificia incen-dunt. Frūmentum omne, praeterquam quod sēcum portā-tūri <sup>84</sup> erant, combūrunt. Id combūrunt <sup>93</sup> ut, domum <sup>38</sup> reditionis spē <sup>48</sup> sublātā, ad omnia pericula subeunda <sup>71</sup> paratiōrēs essent. <sup>93</sup> Quemque <sup>36</sup> cibāria sibi <sup>17</sup> domō <sup>40</sup> efferre, <sup>76</sup> iubent. Quemque molita cibāria trium <sup>3</sup> mēn-sium <sup>2</sup> efferre <sup>76</sup> iubent.

*They persuade other tribes to go also*

Persuādent Rauracis<sup>13</sup> et Tulingis et Latobrigis, finitimis,<sup>19</sup> ut ūnā cum iis proficiscantur. Persuādent iis ut, eōdem cōsiliō<sup>35</sup> ūsi, ūnā cum iis proficiscantur. Persuādent iis ut, oppidis<sup>43</sup> suis vicisque exūstis,<sup>43</sup> ūnā cum iis proficiscantur. Bōiōs, receptōs ad sē sociōs<sup>79</sup> sibi<sup>13</sup> adsciscunt. Boiī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant. Bōiōs, qui in agrum Nōricum trānsierant et Nōrēiam oppūgnāverant, sibi adsciscunt.

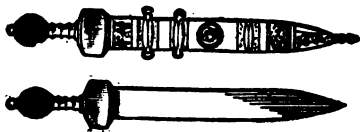


## CHAPTER V OF CÆSAR

5. Post ēius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id quod cōstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant. Ubi

The Helvetians complete their preparations and depart.

iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrāti sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia pericula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauracis et Tulingis et Latobrigis, finitimis, uti eōdem ūsi cōsiliō, oppidis suis vicisque exūstis, ūnā cum eis proficiscantur; Bōiōsque, qui trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppūgnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adsciscunt.

*Gladii*

## 6. THE TWO ROUTES

Two ways of exit are located, one through the beautiful Pas de l'Ecluse.

Erant omninō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō<sup>40</sup> exire possent<sup>50</sup>: ūnum iter per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum,<sup>70</sup> quā singuli carrī dūcerentur.<sup>50</sup> Mōns, autem, altissimus,<sup>73</sup> impendēbat ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent. Alterum iter per prōvinciam nostram erat. Id multō<sup>81</sup> facilius atque expeditius erat, propterea quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum Rhodanus fluit.<sup>60</sup> Is nōnnūllis locis<sup>80</sup> vadō trānsitur.

*They choose the second route*

Helvētīi et Allobrogēs nūper pācātī erant. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum proximumque finibus<sup>10</sup> Helvētiōrum<sup>1</sup> est Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs<sup>25</sup> pertinet. Helvētīi sēsē<sup>30</sup> Allobrogibus<sup>12</sup> persuāsūrōs<sup>84</sup> esse existimābant. Existimābant sēsē Allobrogibus persuāsūrōs, quod<sup>54</sup> Allobrogēs nōndum bonō animō<sup>2</sup> in populum Rōmānum vidērentur.<sup>68</sup> Existimābant sēsē Allobrogibus vel persuāsūrōs vel vi<sup>32</sup> coactūrōs, ut per suōs finēs Helvētiōs ire paterentur.<sup>48</sup>

*March 28 is set for their departure*

Omnibus rēbus<sup>43</sup> ad profectiōnem comparātis, Helvētīi diem dicunt. Diem dicunt, quā<sup>48</sup> diē omnēs ad ripam<sup>77</sup> Rhodanī conveniant.<sup>48</sup> Is diēs erat ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprilēs. Lūcius Piso et Aulus Gabīnius cōsulēs erant. Is diēs erat a. d. V. Kal. Apr., L. Pisōne, A. Gabiniō cōsulibus.<sup>48</sup>



## CHAPTER VI OF CÆSAR

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exire possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singuli carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent: alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, proptereā quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōnnūllis locis vadō trānsitur.

They arrange  
to cross  
the Rhone  
and march  
through the  
Roman  
Province.

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, existimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis, diem dicunt quā diē ad ripam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pisōne, A. Gabiniō cōsulibus.



## 7. THE NEWS REACHES CÆSAR. — HIS ACTIVE MEASURES

Cæsar was at Rome, making preparations to set out on his post-consular appointment as governor of Gaul. Word was brought to him of the plans of the Helvetii. He immediately left Rome, and, by forced marches of fully one hundred miles a day, reached the Rhone within a week. On his arrival, he began vigorous operations against the Helvetii, who soon made overtures to him. But Cæsar was unwilling to grant their request of a peaceful march across Ro-

man dominion, especially because of his remembrance of certain reverses in the trouble with the Cimbri, in which the Helvetii had had a share, some fifty years before. However, he craftily postponed his answer to the Helvetian delegates until the middle of the coming April. Thus the wariness of the politician becomes the wariness of the military commander.

Caesari<sup>11</sup> id nūntiātum est. Eōs<sup>36</sup> per prōvinciam nostram iter facere<sup>74</sup> cōnārī<sup>67</sup> nūntiātum est. Cum id Caesari<sup>14</sup> nūntiātum esset,<sup>58</sup> mātūrat<sup>94</sup> ab urbe proficiscī.<sup>74</sup> Caesar in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad<sup>77</sup> Genāvam pervenit. Quam<sup>78</sup> māximīs potest itineribus contendit. Prōvinciae<sup>12</sup> tōtī māgnum numerum militum<sup>5</sup> imperat. Quam māximum potest numerum militum imperat. Erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna. Pontem,<sup>36</sup> quī erat ad<sup>77</sup> Genāvam, iubet<sup>76</sup> rescindī. Ubi<sup>59</sup> dē eiūs<sup>3</sup> adventū Helvētīi certiōrēs<sup>82</sup> facti sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt. Hi nōbilissimī<sup>82</sup> civitātis<sup>5</sup> erant. Helvētīi lēgātōs mittunt, cūius lēgātiōnis<sup>5</sup> Nammēius et Verucloetius principem locum obtinēbant. Helvētīi lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt,<sup>94</sup> quī<sup>48</sup> dīcerent,<sup>94</sup> sibi<sup>15</sup> esse in animō iter per prōvinciam facere. Sibi esse<sup>66</sup> in animō per prōvinciam sine ūllō maleficiō ire,<sup>76</sup> proptereā quod aliud iter habērent<sup>68</sup> nūllum. Helvētīōs rogāre<sup>67</sup> ut, voluntāte<sup>38</sup> Caesaris, id sibi<sup>98</sup> facere<sup>76</sup> liceat.<sup>48</sup>

*Cæsar's reasons for rejecting ; his duplicity*

Caesar id concēdendum<sup>65</sup> esse nōn putābat, quod<sup>60</sup> Lūcium Cassium memoriā tenēbat. L. Cassius, cōsul, occisus erat. Exercitus eiūs ab Helvētīis<sup>30</sup> pulsus et sub iugum missus erat. Caesar, quod memoriā<sup>32</sup> tenēbat L. Cassium,<sup>36</sup> cōsulem,<sup>79</sup> occisum,<sup>76</sup> concēdendum<sup>67</sup> nōn putābat. Neque exīstimābat hominēs,<sup>26</sup> inimicō animō,<sup>36</sup>

temperātūrōs<sup>66</sup> esse ab iniuriā et maleficiō.<sup>67</sup> Caesar nōn existimābat Helvētiōs,<sup>68</sup> facultāte<sup>69</sup> itineris<sup>70</sup> faciundi<sup>71</sup> per prōvinciam datā, temperātūrōs<sup>72</sup> ā maleficiō. Tamen, lēgātis<sup>73</sup> respondit sē<sup>74</sup> diem ad dēliberandum<sup>75</sup> sūmptūrum<sup>76</sup> esse. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere<sup>77</sup> posset, dum<sup>78</sup> militēs convenirent, lēgātis respondit sē diem sūmptūrum.<sup>79</sup> Lēgātis respondit: si quid vellent,<sup>80</sup> ad Īdūs<sup>81</sup> Aprilēs reverterentur.<sup>82</sup>

## CHAPTER VII OF CÆSAR

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficiscī, et quam māximis potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam māximum potest militum numerum imperat (erat omninō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem quī erat ad Genāvam iubet rescindī. Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētīi certiōrēs facti sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs civitātis, cūius lēgatiōnis Namēius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, qui dicerent sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum: rogāre ut ēius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occisum exercitumque ēius ab Helvētiis pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimicō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundi, temperātūrōs ab iniuriā et maleficiō existimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset dum militēs quōs imperāverat convenirent, lēgātis respondit diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum: si quid vellent, ad Īd. Apr. reverterentur.

Caesar delays them by pretexts.

## 8. CÆSAR'S FORTIFICATIONS

NOTE: For a full description of this line of defenses, see the *Notes*.

Intereā, ā lacū Lemannō ad montem Iūram, mūrum fossamque perdūcit. Eā legiōne,<sup>32</sup> quam sēcum habēbat, militibusque quī ex prōvinciā<sup>40</sup> convēnerant, mūrum fossamque perdūcit. Ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen<sup>35</sup> Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab<sup>95</sup> Helvētiis dividit, mūrum fossamque perdūcit. Mūrum fossamque, mīlia<sup>33</sup> passum XVIII in longitudinem, perdūcit. Mūrum fossamque, in altitūdinem pedum<sup>2</sup> sēdecim, perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit et castella commūnit, quō<sup>78</sup> facilius Helvētiōs prohibēre possit. Caesar castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē<sup>43</sup> invitō trānsire cōnārentur,<sup>96</sup> prohibēre possit.

*The appointed day arrives, and Caesar refuses the request made several days before*

Ea diēs, quam cōstituerat cum lēgātis, vēnit. Lēgāti ad eum revertērunt. Iis dixit Caesar: *Mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī, nōn possum iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare; sī vim facere cōnābimīni,<sup>62</sup> prohibēbō.*<sup>62</sup>

Ubi<sup>69</sup> ea diēs, quam cōstituerat cum lēgātis, vēnit, negat sē<sup>36</sup> posse<sup>67</sup> iter ūllī<sup>11</sup> dare.<sup>74</sup>

Ubi ea diēs vēnit et lēgāti ad eum revertērunt, negat sē posse iter per prōvinciam dare. Sī vim facere cōnentur,<sup>68</sup> sē eōs prohibitūrum esse ostendit. Negat sē, mōre<sup>29</sup> et exemplō populī Rōmānī,<sup>3</sup> posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare.

*The Helvetii attempt to pass, but are repulsed*

Helvētii, eā spē<sup>95</sup> dēiecti, si perrumpere possent,<sup>96</sup> cōnāti sunt. Nāvibus iūctis ratibusque complūribus factis,<sup>98</sup> Helvētii cōnāti sunt si perrumpere possent. Alii vadis<sup>92</sup> Rhodanī, quā minima<sup>93</sup> altitūdō flūminis erat, nōnnumquam interdiū, saepius noctū, si perrumpere possent, cōnāti sunt. Helvētii, operis mūnitiōne<sup>92</sup> et militum<sup>9</sup> concursū et tēlis repulsi, hōc<sup>95</sup> cōnātū dēstitērunt.



## CHAPTER VIII OF CÆSAR'S TEXT

8. Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat militibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flū-  
 He prevents men Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, quī  
 their crossing the Rhone. finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis dividit, milia  
 passuum decem novem mūrū in altitudinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, si sē invitō trānsire cōnārentur, prohibēre possit. Ubi ea diēs quam cōstituerat cum lēgātis vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūlli per prōvinciam dare; et, si vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētii eā spē dēiecti, nāvibus iūctis ratibusque complūribus factis, alii vadis Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōnnumquam interdiū, saepius noctū, si perrumpere possent cōnāti, operis mūnitiōne et militum concursū et tēlis repulsi hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

## 9. ACROSS THE SEQUANIAN COUNTRY

Failing to force a way against Cæsar's obstructions, the exit through the famous Pas de l'Ecluse alone remained. Let the student study the map of Helvetia, p. 48.

Relinquēbātur ūna via per Sēquanōs, quā,<sup>32</sup> Sēquanīs<sup>43</sup> invitīs, propter angustias nōn poterant ire. Cum Helvētīi, suā sponte,<sup>34</sup> hīs<sup>12</sup> persuādere nōn possent,<sup>51</sup> lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem Aeduum mittunt. Lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem mittunt,<sup>34</sup> ut, eō<sup>43</sup> dēprecātore, ā Sēquanīs impetrarent.<sup>34</sup>

*Dumnorix, the Æduan*

Dumnorix, grātiā<sup>39</sup> et largitiōne, apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat. Helvētīis<sup>19</sup> erat amicus<sup>53</sup> quod ex eā civitate filiam Orgetorigis in mātrimonium dūxerat. Cupiditate<sup>39</sup> rēgnī<sup>4</sup> adductus, novīs rēbus<sup>12</sup> studēbat. Quam<sup>73</sup> plūrimās civitatēs suō beneficiō<sup>34</sup> obstrictās<sup>88</sup> habēre volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per finēs suōs Helvētīos ire patiantur.<sup>49</sup> Perficit ut inter sēsē obsidēs dent. Sēquanī obsidēs dant nē<sup>48</sup> itinere<sup>37</sup> Helvētīos prohibeant. Helvētīi, ut sine<sup>34</sup> maleficiō et iniuriā trānseant.<sup>48</sup>



## CHAPTER IX OF CÆSAR

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invitīs propter angustias ire nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem Aeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātore ā Sēquanīs impetrarent. Dumnorix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat, et Helvētīis erat amicus quod ex eā civitate

The Helvetians obtain permission from the Sequani to pass through their country.

Orgetorigis filiam in mātrimonium dūxerat; et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novis rēbus studēbat, et quam plūrimās civitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētīi, ut sine maleficiō et iniuriā trāseant.



## 10. REPORTED DESTINATION OF THE HELVETII

Caesari<sup>11</sup> renūntiātur, Helvētiīs esse<sup>66</sup> in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum<sup>1</sup> et Aeduōrum iter in finēs<sup>38</sup> Santonum<sup>1</sup> facere.<sup>76</sup> Santonēs nōn longē ā finibus<sup>66</sup> Tolōsātium absunt, quae civitās est in prōvinciā.

### *Reason for Caesar's opposition*

Si id fiet,<sup>68</sup> māgnō cum<sup>38</sup> periculō prōvinciae erit.<sup>68</sup>

Si id fieret,<sup>68</sup> Caesar intellegēbat cum māgnō periculō futūrum esse ut<sup>100</sup> prōvincia hominēs bellicōsōs finitimōs<sup>79</sup> habēret. Intellegēbat māgnō cum periculō futūrum esse ut prōvincia hominēs, populi<sup>4</sup> Rōmāni inimicōs,<sup>79</sup> locis<sup>39</sup> patentibus finitimōs<sup>79</sup> habēret.<sup>100</sup> Māgnō cum periculō erit ut prōvincia Helvētiōs locis patentibus māximēque frūmentāriis habeat.<sup>64</sup>

### *Cæsar returns to Italy for new legions*

Ob eās causās, ei mūnitiōnī,<sup>18</sup> quam fēcerat, Titum Labiēnum lēgātum<sup>79</sup> prae-fēcit. Ipse in Ītaliā māgnis itineribus contendit. Ibi duās legiōnēs cōscribit<sup>64</sup> et trēs, quae

circum Aquilēiam hiemābant,<sup>84</sup> ex hibernis ēdūcit. Quā proximum<sup>85</sup> iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum his<sup>86</sup> quinque legiōnibus ire contendit.

*The Alpine tribes vainly block his way*

Ibi Ceutrōnēs et Grāioceli et Caturigēs, locis superiōribus occupātis,<sup>87</sup> exercitum itinere<sup>87</sup> prohibēre cōnantur. His<sup>88</sup> complūribus proeliis<sup>84</sup> pulsīs, ab Ocelō in finēs Vocontiōrum diē<sup>41</sup> septimō pervenit. Ocelum est citeriōris prōvinciae oppidum extrēmum.<sup>82</sup> Vocontii sunt ulteriōris prōvinciae.<sup>5</sup> Inde in finēs Allobrogum, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī.



## CHAPTER X OF CÆSAR

10. Caesari renūtiātur Helvētiis esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus ab-  
sunt, quae civitās est in prōvincia. Id si fieret, intellegēbat māgnō cum periculō prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populi Rōmāni inimicōs, locis patentibus māximēque frūmentāriis finitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās ei mūnitiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit; ipse in Ītaliā māgnis itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōscribit, et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hibernis ēdūcit, et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum his quinque legiōnibus ire contendit. Ibi Ceutrōnēs et Grāioceli et Caturigēs locis superiōribus occupātis itinere exercitum

Cæsar  
brings up his  
forces to op-  
pose their  
passage.



prohibere cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliis pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī.



## 11. THE RAVAGES OF WAR

“Even now the devastation is begun,  
And half the business of destruction done.”

— GOLDSMITH.

Helvētīi iam per angustīās et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant. In finēs Aeduōrum pervēnerant, eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Aeduī, cum sē suaque ab iīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt. Lēgātōs mittunt rogātum<sup>71</sup> auxilium.

### *The Ædui*

“The Ædui alone of the Gauls claim the name of brotherhood with the Roman people.” — TACITUS.

Aeduī dicunt: Sē<sup>66</sup> ita meritōs esse ut agrī vāstārī nōn dēbuerint. Ita sē omnī tempore meritōs esse ut liberī Aeduōrum in servitūtem abdūcī nōn dēbuerint. Ita sē dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse, ut paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī oppida eōrum expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint.

“*We have nothing left*”

Eōdem tempore Ambarri, necessārii et cōsanguinei Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt: sēsē vim hostium

nōn facile prohibēre. Ambarri dicunt : sēsē, dēpopulātis agris, nōn facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, qui trāns Rhodanum vicōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā <sup>34</sup> sē ad Caesarem recipiunt. Dēmōnstrant : sibi, <sup>15</sup> praeter agrī <sup>6</sup> solum, nihil esse reliquī. <sup>5</sup> Quibus rēbus adductus, Caesar nōn exspectandum esse sibi <sup>16</sup> statuit, dum Helvētiī in finēs Santonum pervenirent. <sup>55</sup> Statuit sibi nōn exspectandum, dum, omnibus fortūnis sociōrum cōsumptis, in Santonēs Helvētiī pervenirent.



## CHAPTER XI OF CÆSAR

II. Helvētiī iam per angustias et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Aeduōrum finēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Aeduī, cum sē suaque ab ēis dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium : Ita sē omni tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse ut paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vās-tārī, liberī eōrum in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore Ambarri, neces-sarii et cōsanguinei Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faci-unt sēsē dēpopulātis agris nōn facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, qui trāns Rhodanum vicōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit dum, omnibus fortūnis sociōrum cōsumptis, in San-tonēs Helvētiī pervenirent.

The Helve-tians invade the country of the Ædui who implore Cæsar's pro-tection.

## 12. THE CROSSING OF THE SAÔNE

Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit. Arar incredibili<sup>84</sup> lēnitāte ita fluit ut<sup>100</sup> oculis<sup>85</sup> in utram partem fluat<sup>86</sup> iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētīi, ratibus ac lintribus iūctis, trānsibant.<sup>86</sup> Caesar certior factus est, Helvētiōs trēs<sup>88</sup> partēs cōpiārum id flūmen<sup>88</sup> trādūxisse.<sup>89</sup> Per explorātōrēs<sup>90</sup> Caesar certior factus est, quārtēm ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castris profectus,<sup>91</sup> ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat.

*The first contact at arms*

Eōs impeditōs et inopinantēs aggressus,<sup>92</sup> māgnam partem eōrum concidit. Reliqui sēsē fugae mandārunt (mandavērunt) atque in proximās silvās<sup>93</sup> abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus: nam omnis civitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs divisa est. Hīc pāgus ūnus L. Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat et ēius exercitum sub iugum miserat. Cassium, cum domō<sup>40</sup> exisset patrum nostrōrum memoriā,<sup>41</sup> Tigurīnī interfēcerant.

*Significance of the fate of the Tigurini*

Ita, pars civitātis Helvētiae, quae insignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō<sup>18</sup> intulerat, princeps poenās persolvit. Ita sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō<sup>38</sup> deōrum immortalium, quae pars civitātis Helvētiae insignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē (quārē) Caesar nōn solum publicās sed etiam privātās iniūriās ultus

est. Privātās iniūriās ultus est quod Tigurini L. Pisōnem lēgātum proeliō interfēcerant. Eōdem proeliō,<sup>41</sup> quō Cassium, Pisōnem interfēcerant. L. Pisō lēgātus avus erat Pisōnis, Caesaris <sup>1</sup> soceri.<sup>79</sup> Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum publicās sed etiam privātās iniūriās ultus est, quod ēius soceri L. Pisōnis avum, L. Pisōnem lēgātum, Tigurini eōdem proeliō, quō <sup>41</sup> Cassium, interfēcerant.



## CHAPTER XII OF CÆSAR

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit, incredibili lēnitāte, ita ut oculis in utram partem fluat iūdicārī nōn possit.

Id Helvētīi ratibus ac lintribus iūctis trānsibant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castris profectus, ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impeditōs et inopinantēs aggressus māgnam partem eōrum concidit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurinus; nam omnis civitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvisa est. Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat et ēius exercitum sub iugum miserat. Ita sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum immortalīum, quae pars civitātis Helvētiae insignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum publicās

At the crossing of the Arar Caesar destroys the Tigurini who formed the rear-guard of the Helvetians.

sed etiam privātās iniūriās ultus est, quod ēius soceri L. Pisōnis avum, L. Pisōnem lēgātum, Tigurinī eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant.



### 13. ACROSS THE SAÔNE

Hōc proeliō factō, Caesar pontem in Arare faciendum<sup>71</sup> cūrat. Ita exercitum trādūcit ut reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum cōsequi posset. Helvētīi repentinō ēius<sup>3</sup> adventū<sup>39</sup> commōti sunt, cum id, quod ipsī diēbus<sup>42</sup> viginti aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, Caesarem ūnō diē<sup>42</sup> fēcisse intellegerent<sup>51</sup>. Lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, cūius lēgatiōnis<sup>4</sup> Divicō princeps fuit. Is bellō<sup>41</sup> Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat.

#### *Divico's speech*

Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Sī populus Rōmānus pācem cum Helvētiīs faceret, Helvētiōs in eam partem itūrōs esse atque ibi futūrōs, ubi Caesar eōs cōstituisset atque esse voluisset. Sin Caesar eōs bellō persequi perseverāret, reminiscerētur<sup>70</sup> veteris<sup>8</sup> incommodi populī Rōmānī. Reminiscerētur pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum<sup>53</sup> ii, qui flūmen trānsissent, suis<sup>17</sup> auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē virtūti populī Rōmānī tribueret. Quod ūnum pāgum adortus esset, nē ob eam rem aut suae māgnopere virtūti tribueret aut Helvētiōs ipsōs dēspiceret. Sē ita ā patribus didicisse, ut virtūte<sup>32</sup> contenderent.<sup>49</sup> Sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut insidiis<sup>32</sup> niterentur. Quārē, nē committeret ut

is locus, ex calamitâte populi Rômânî nomen caperet.<sup>40</sup> Nē committeret ut is locus, ubi cōstitissent, ex interneciōne exercitûs<sup>4</sup> Rômânî nomen caperet, aut memoriam prōderet.

*Divico's speech in direct discourse*

NOTE: Let the pupil examine carefully the changes made, comparing it closely with the preceding indirect form. Study Rules 66-70.

"Sî populus Rômānus pācem cum Helvētiis *faciet*, *Helvētîi* in eam partem *ibunt* atque ibi *erunt*, ubi eōs *tū*, Caesar, cōstitueris atque esse *volueris*. Sî *tū*, Caesar, eōs bellō persequi *perseverābis*, *reminiscere* veteris incommodi populi Rômânî. *Reminiscere* pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum *adortus es*, cum iî, qui flūmen *trānsierant*, suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, *nōlî* virtūti populi Rômânî *tribuere*. Quod ūnum pāgum *adortus es*, *nōlî* ob eam rem aut *tuæ* māgnopere virtūti *tribuere* aut Helvētiōs ipsōs *dēspicere*. *Nōs* ita ā patribus *didicimus* ut virtūte *contendāmus*. *Nōs* ita ā patribus māiōribusque *nostris* *didicimus* ut magis virtūte *contendāmus* quam dolō aut insidiis *nītāmur*. Quārē *nōlî* *committere* ut is locus ex calamitâte populi Rômânî nomen *capiat*. *Nōlî* *committere* ut is locus, ubi cōstitimus, ex interneciōne exercitûs Rômânî nomen *capiat*, aut memoriam *prōdat*."



### CHAPTER XIII OF CÆSAR

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōsequi posset, pontem in Arare faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētîi repentinō eiūs adventū commōtî, cum id quod ipsî diēbus xx aegerrimē cōnfē-

cerant, ut flūmen trānsirent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intel-  
legerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cuius lēgatiōnis Divicō  
princeps fuit, qui bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiō-  
rum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Sī pācem  
populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiis faceret, in eam  
partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs ubi  
eōs Caesar cōstituisset atque esse voluisset:

sīn bellō persequi persevēraret, reminiscerē-  
tur et veteris incommodi populī Rōmāni et pristinae  
virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum ador-  
tus esset, cum ei qui flūmen trānsissent suis auxilium ferre  
nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae māgnopere virtūti  
tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret: sē ita ā patribus māiōribus-  
que suis didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō  
aut insidiis nīterentur. Quā rē nē committeret ut is locus  
ubi cōstitissent ex calamitāte populī Rōmāni et inter-  
neciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriā prōderet.

The Hel-  
vetians,  
headed by  
Divico,  
haughtily  
ask for  
peace.



*Signa*

## 14. CÆSAR'S REPLY

His Caesar ita respondit: Eō<sup>39</sup> sibi minus dubitātiōnis<sup>8</sup> dari, quod eās rēs memoriā tenēret. Sē eās rēs, quās lēgātī Helvētīi commemorāssent, eō gravius ferre quō<sup>41</sup> minus meritō<sup>38</sup> populi Rōmānī accidissent. Si populus Rōmānus alicūius iniūriæ<sup>7</sup> sibi<sup>18</sup> cōnsciū fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre. Sed populum Rōmānum eō dēceptum esse, quod aliquid ā sē commissum esse nōn intellexeret, quārē timēret. Eō dēceptum, quod sine causā sibi<sup>16</sup> timendum esse nōn putāret. Quod<sup>101</sup> si veteris contumēliæ<sup>8</sup> obliviscī vellet, num<sup>69</sup> etiam memoriā recentium iniūriarū<sup>4</sup> dēpōnere posse?<sup>69</sup> Num etiam recentium iniūriarū — quod, eō invitō,<sup>43</sup> Helvētīi iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Aeduōs et Ambarrōs et Allobrogēs vexāssent — memoriā dēpōnere posse? Quod Helvētīi suā victoriā<sup>39</sup> tam insolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās tulisse admirārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortalēs his,<sup>11</sup> quōs ulciscī velint, secundiōrēs rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Quō<sup>78</sup> gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, deōs immortalēs his, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulciscī velint, secundiōrēs interdum rēs concēdere.

*Cæsar's terms of peace*

Cum ea ita sint,<sup>82</sup> tamen, sēsē cum Helvētīiis pācem factūrum esse. Si obsidēs ab iis sibi dentur, et si Aeduīs<sup>38</sup> dē iniūriis, satisfaciant, item si Allobrogibus<sup>38</sup> satisfaciant, sēsē cum Helvētīiis pācem esse factūrum. Si obsidēs ab iis sibi dentur, ut ea, quae polliceantur, Helvētīōs factūrōs esse intellegat, Caesarem cum iis pācem esse factūrum.



Si Helvētiī Aeduīs dē iniūriīs, quās ipsīs<sup>13</sup> sociisque eōrum intulerint, satisfaciant, sēsē cum iis pācem esse factūrum.

*Divico's retort*

Divicō respondit: Helvētiōs ā māiōribus suis ita institūtōs esse, ut obsidēs accipere, nōn dare cōsuērint. Eius rei<sup>4</sup> populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō, discessit.

NOTE: Let the pupil now write Cæsar's reply in *direct* form.



#### CHAPTER XIV OF CÆSAR

14. His Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis dari, quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorās-  
 Cæsar pro- sent memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre  
 poses terms quō minus meritō populi Rōmāni accidissent;  
 which they quī sī alicūius iniūriæ sibi cōnsciūs fuisset,  
 refuse. nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque  
 commissum ā sē intellexeret quā rē timēret, neque sine  
 causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliæ  
 oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriarū, quod eō  
 invitō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod  
 Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāssent,  
 memoriā dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam insolenter  
 glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās  
 tulisse admirārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōsuēsse enim  
 deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne  
 rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcisci velint, his  
 secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitatem  
 concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, si obsidēs ab eis sibi

dentur, uti ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et si Aeduis dē iniūriis quās ipsis sociisque eōrum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum eis pācem esse factūrum. Divicō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā māiōribus suis institūtōs esse uti obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; eius rei populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

---

### 15. BOTH ARMIES ADVANCE

Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar. Equitātum omnem, ad <sup>77</sup> numerum quattuor milium, praemittit, quī <sup>48</sup> videant, quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. <sup>56</sup> Equitātum omnem, quem ex omni prōvinciā et Aeduis atque eōrum sociis coāctum habēbat, praemittit.

#### *Caesar meets a slight reverse*

Qui <sup>59</sup> novissimum agmen cupidius <sup>68</sup> insecūtī, aliēnō locō <sup>39</sup> cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt. Pauci dē nostris cadunt. Quō proeliō sublātī sunt Helvētiī, quod quīngentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum prōpulerant. Helvētiī, eō proeliō sublātī, audācius subsistere nōnumquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnis, pābulatiōnibus populatiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs <sup>28</sup> circiter quindecim iter fēcērunt, ut inter novissimum agmen hostium et nostrum primum nōn amplius <sup>31</sup> quīnis aut sēnis milibus passuum interesset.

## CHAPTER XV OF CAESAR

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar, equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omni prōvinciā et Aeduis atque eōrum sociis coāctum habēbat, praemittit qui videant quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Qui cupidius novissimum agmen insecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et pauci dē nostris cadunt. Quō proeliō sublāti Helvētiī, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōnumquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, āc satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapinis, pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum nōn amplius quīnis aut sēnis milibus passuum interesset.



## 16. LACK OF SUPPLIES

Interim cotidiē Caesar Aeduōs<sup>31</sup> frūmentum, quod publicē polliciti essent,<sup>32</sup> flāgitāre.<sup>33</sup> Nam, propter frigora, nōn modo frūmenta in agris mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābuli quidem satis māgna cōpia suppetēbat. Propter frigora, quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, satis māgna cōpia pābuli nōn suppetēbat. Eō autem frūmentō<sup>34</sup>, quod flūmine<sup>35</sup> Arare nāvibus subvexerat, utī minus poterat, propterea quod Helvētiī iter ab Arare āver-

terant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem<sup>38</sup> ex diē dūcere<sup>39</sup> Aeduī. Frūmentum cōferri,<sup>40</sup> comportārī, adesse dicere Aeduī.

*Cæsar censures the Ædui*

Ubi sē diūtius<sup>41</sup> dūcī intellēxit et diem instāre, quō diē frūmentum militibus mētīri oportēret, principibus eōrum convocātis, graviter eōs accūsāt. Principum Aeduōrum māgnam cōpiam in castris habēbat, in his Divitiācō et Liscō.<sup>42</sup> Liscus summō magistrātui<sup>43</sup> praeerat, quem Aeduī *vergobretum*<sup>44</sup> appellant, quī creātur annuus et vitæ<sup>45</sup> necisque in suōs potestātem habet. Caesar principēs graviter accūsāt, quod, cum frūmentum neque emī neque ex agris sūmī posset,<sup>46</sup> tam necessariō tempore, tam propinquis hostibus,<sup>47</sup> ab iis nōn sublevētur.<sup>48</sup> Multō<sup>49</sup> etiam gravius queritur, praesertim cum, eōrum precibus adductus, bellum suscēperit. Eōs accūsāt, quod sit dēstitūtus.<sup>50</sup>



CHAPTER XVI OF CÆSAR'S TEXT

16. Interim cotidiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum quod essent publicē polliciti flāgitāre. Nam propter frigora, quod Gallia sub septentrionibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agris mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābuli quidem satis māgna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō quod flūmine Arare nāvibus subvexerat proptereā minus ūti poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Aeduī; cōferri, comportārī, adesse dicere. Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem instāre quō diē frūmentum militibus mētīri

The Æduans  
fail to furnish  
Caesar prom-  
ised supplies.

oportēret, convocātis eōrum principibus, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castris habēbat, in his Divitiācō et Liscō, qui summō magistrātui praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Aeduī, quī creātur annuus et vitae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsāt, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agris sūmī posset, tam necessariō tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab eis nōn sublevētur; praesertim cum māgnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscepērit, multō etiam gravius quod sit dēstitūtus queritur.



#### 17. LISCUS EXPLAINS THE CAUSE: OPPOSITION OF A POWERFUL PRIVATE CLASS

Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus est. Tum dēmum Liscus prōpōnit quod antea tacuerat. Dixit: Esse nōn-nūllōs, quōrum auctōritās plūrimum valeat quam ipsi magistrātūs. Quōs privātīm plūs posse quam magistrātūs. Hōs multitudinē dēterrēre, nē frūmentum cōferant quod cōferre<sup>74</sup> dēbeant. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne plēbem dēterrēre nē frūmentum cōferant quod dēbeant. Hōs principātum Galliae<sup>4</sup> obtinēre nōn posse. Hōs dicere<sup>87</sup>: Gallōrum<sup>8</sup> quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre praestāre. Hōs dicere: sī iam principātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum imperia perferre praestāre. Hōs dicere: sē nōn dubitāre quā<sup>80</sup> Rōmānī Aeduīs<sup>87</sup> libertātem sint ēreptūrī.<sup>84</sup> Hōs dicere: sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, Rōmānōs unā cum reliquā Galliā Aeduīs libertātem ēreptūrōs esse.

Ab eisdem nostra cōnsilia hostibus ēnūntiārī. Nostra cōnsilia quaeque in castris gerantur ēnūntiārī. Hōs ā sē coercērī<sup>76</sup> nōn posse. Sē Caesarī necessariam rem ēnūn-

tiāre coāctum.<sup>87</sup> Intellegere sēsē cum quantō<sup>88</sup> periculō id fēcerit.<sup>86</sup> Sē ob eam causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisse.<sup>83</sup>

---

#### CHAPTER XVII OF CÆSAR'S TEXT

17. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus quod antea tacuerat prōpōnit: Esse nōnnūllōs quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī Liscus shows the bad faith of an Æduan faction headed by Dumnorix. privātīm plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiosā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitudinem dēterrere nē frūmentum cōferant quod dēbeant: praestāre, si iam principātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quīn, si Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, unā cum reliquā Galliā Aeduis libertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab eisdem nostra cōsilia quaeque in castris gerantur hostibus ēnūntiārī; hōs ā sē coērcērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessariam rem coāctus Caesarī ēnūntiārīt, intellegere sēsē quantō id cum periculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam quam diū potuerit tacuisse.

---

#### 17. IN DIRECT DISCOURSE FOR PURPOSE OF COMPARISON

##### *Liscus' own words to Cæsar*

"*Sunt nōnnūllī quōrum auctōritās valeat, quī privātīm plūs possint<sup>80</sup> quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hī multitudinem dēterrēt nē frūmentum cōferant<sup>48</sup> quod dēbent. Praestat, si iam principātum obtinēre nōn possunt, Gallōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitant quīn,<sup>80</sup> si Helvētiōs su-*

perāverint Rōmānī, libertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab eisdem *vestra* cōsilia quaeque in castris gerantur hostibus *ēnūntiantur*; *hī ā mē* coērcērī nōn *possunt*. Quin etiam, quod necessariō coactus *tibi ēnūntiāvī, intellegō* quantō id cum periculō *fēcerim*, et ob eam causam quam diū *potuī tacuī*."



### 18. THE PRIVATE CONFERENCE WITH LISCUS

Caesar Dumnorigem dēsīgnārī sentiēbat. Hāc ōrātiōne Liscī, Dumnorix dēsīgnātus est. Caesar, plūribus<sup>78</sup> praesentibus,<sup>79</sup> eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat. Celeriter concilium dīmittit. Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex eō sōlō ea quae in conventū dixerat. Liscus liberius atque audācius dicit. Caesar eadem sēcrētō ab aliis quaerit. Reperit ea esse vēra: Dumnorigem cupidum<sup>80</sup> rērum<sup>7</sup> novārum esse; complūrēs annōs<sup>81</sup> portōria Aeduōrum redēpta habēre.

Dumnorix summā audāciā<sup>82</sup> erat. Māgnā grātiā<sup>83</sup> apud plēbem erat. Complūrēs annōs omnia Aeduōrum vectigālia redēpta habēbat. Vectigālia parvō pretiō<sup>84</sup> redēpta habēbat, proptereā quod, illō<sup>85</sup> licente, contrā licērī audēret<sup>86</sup> nēmō. His rēbus suam rem familiārem augēbat. Facultātēs māgnās ad largiendum comparābat. Māgnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alēbat. Equitātum circum sē semper habēbat. Domī<sup>87</sup> largiter poterat. Neque solum domī sed etiam apud finitimās civitātēs largiter poterat. Hūius potentiae<sup>88</sup> causā mātrem in Biturigibus collocāvit. Mātrem in Biturigibus homini illic nobilissimō ac potentissimō collocāvit. Ipse ex Helvētiis uxōrem habuit. Sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās civitātēs collocāvit. Favēbat et cupiēbat

Helvētiis<sup>12</sup> propter eam affinitatem. Ōdit etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū<sup>13</sup> potentia ēius dēminūta sit. Eōrum adventū, Divitiācus frāter in antiquum locum grātia<sup>4</sup> atque honoris restitutus est. Si quid accidat<sup>14</sup> Rōmānis, summam in spem, per Helvētiōs, rēgnī obtinendī veniat. Imperiō<sup>15</sup> populī Rōmāni, dē rēgnō dēspērat. Nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā grātiā quam habet, dēspērat.

Proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diēbus<sup>16</sup> factum erat. Reperiēbat in quaerendō Caesar, initium ēius fugae<sup>4</sup> ā Dumnorige factum esse. Equitātui<sup>17</sup> quem auxiliō<sup>17</sup> Caesarī Aeduī miserant, Dumnorix praeerat. Eōrum<sup>3</sup> fugā,<sup>18</sup> reliquus equitātus perterritus est.



## CHAPTER XVIII OF CÆSAR

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Lisci Dumnorigem, Divitiāci frātrem, dēsignārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in conventū dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audācius.

The influence of Dumnorix. His character and policy.

### *The influence of Dumnorix*

Eadem sēcrētō ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vēra: 'Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summā audāciā, māgnā apud plēbem propter liberālitatem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum.

### *His character*

Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaue omnia Aeduōrum vectigālia parvō pretiō redēpta habēre, proptereā quod



illō licente contrā licēri audeat nēmō. His rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum māgnās comparāsse; māgnū numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre; neque solum domi, sed etiam apud finitimās civitātēs largiter posse, atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturigibus hominī illic nōbilissimō ac potentissimō collocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiis uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās civitātēs collocāsse.

### *His policy*

Favēre et cupere Helvētiis propter eam affinitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Divitiācus frāter in antiquum locum grātiaē atque honoris sit restitūtus. Si quid accidat Rōmānis, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam habeat grātiā, dēspērāre.' Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diēbus esset factum, initium eius fugae factum ā Dumnorige atque eius equitibus (nam equitātui, quem auxiliō Caesarī Aeduī miserant, Dumnorix praeerat); eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.



*Galeae*

### 19. FACTS AND SUSPICIONS WEIGH AGAINST THE ÆDUAN MAGNATE

Ad hās suspiciōnēs certissimae rēs accessērunt. Dumnorix per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxerat. Obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāverat. Ea omnia, iniūssū Caesaris, fēcerat. Ā magistrātū Aeduōrum accūsātus erat. Ea omnia, inscientibus Aeduis, fēcerat. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis, Caesar satis esse causae<sup>8</sup> arbitrābātur quā rē in eum animadverteret.<sup>9</sup> Arbitrābātur satis esse causae quā rē in Dumnorigem aut ipse animadverteret aut civitātem animadvertere iubēret.

#### *The opposing force of Divitiacus' loyalty*

Ūna rēs his omnibus rēbus<sup>12</sup> repūgnābat. Divitiāci frātris in populum Rōmānum summum studium cōgnōverat. Summam in sē voluntātem cōgnōverat. Ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam Divitiāci cōgnōverat. Hōc omnibus Dumnorigis iniūriis repūgnābat: nam verēbātur Caesar, nē, ēius suppliciō, Divitiāci animum offenderet.<sup>10</sup> Itaque, priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Divitiācum ad sē vocārī iubet. Cotidiānis interpretibus remōtis, per Gaium Valerium Procillum cum eō colloquitur. C. Valerius Procillus, princeps Galliae prōvinciae, familiāris suus erat. Ei summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat.

Caesar simul commonefacit quae, ipsō praesente, in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorige sint dicta.<sup>11</sup> Ostendit quae sēparātīm quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit. Caesar petit atque hortātur ut sine ēius offēnsiōne animi<sup>4</sup> ipse dē eō statuāt. Caesar petit ut, causā cōgnitā, vel ipse dē eō statuāt, vel civitātem statuere iubeat.

## CHAPTER XIX OF CÆSAR

**19.** Quibus rēbus cōgnitis, cum ad hās suspiciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrasset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniūssū suō et civitātis sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Aeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābatur quā rē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut civitātem animadvertere iubēret. His omnibus rēbus ūnum repūgnābat, quod Divitiāci frātis summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cōgnōverat : nam nē ēius suppliciō Divitiāci animum offenderet verēbatur. Itaque priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Divitiācum ad sē vocārī iubet, et cotidiānis interpretibus remōtis per C. Valerium Procillum, principem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō colloquitur ; simul commonefacit quae ipsō praesente in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit quae sēparātīm quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit ; petit atque hortātur ut sine ēius offēnsiōne animi vel ipse dē eō, causā cōgnitā, statuatur, vel civitātem statuere iubeat.

Cæsar coun-  
sels with  
Divitiacus  
concerning  
his brother  
Dumnorix.



*Nāvis Longa*

## 20. THE PLEA OF DIVITIACUS

Divitiācus, multis cum lacrimis,<sup>34</sup> Caesarem complexus est. Obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius<sup>35</sup> in frātre statueret.

Divitiācus dixit :

"*Scio haec esse vēra, nec quisquam ex eō plūs quam ego dolōris<sup>5</sup> capit, propterea quod, cum ego grātiā<sup>39</sup> plūrium possem domi atque in reliquā Galliā et cum ille minimum propter adulēscēntiam posset, per mē<sup>39</sup> crevit; quibus opibus<sup>35</sup> ac nervis nōn solum ad minuendam<sup>71</sup> grātiā meam sed paene ad perniciem meam ūtitur. Ego tamen et amōre frāternō et existimātiōne vulgī commoveor. Quod<sup>101</sup> si quid ei<sup>13</sup> ā tē acciderit, cum ego hunc locum amicitiae apud tē teneam, nēmō existimābit nōn meā voluntate factum esse. Quā ex rē tōtius Galliae animi ā mē āvertentur.*"

*Dumnorix is spared but placed under guard*

Plūribus verbis<sup>34</sup> ā Caesare haec petēbat. Cum haec flēns peteret, Caesar ēius dextram prēndit. Cōsōlātus rogat ut finem ōrandi faciat.<sup>45</sup> Tantī<sup>3</sup> ēius apud sē grātiā esse ostendit uti suum dolōrem condōnet.<sup>46</sup> Rei pūblicae iniūriam Divitiāci precibus<sup>13</sup> condōnat. Grātiā Divitiāci tantī apud Caesarem est uti iniūriās Dumnorigis frātris voluntāti<sup>13</sup> Divitiāci condōnet. Dumnorigem ad sē vocat, et frātre adhibet. Caesar ostendit quae in Dumnorige reprehendat.<sup>56</sup> Caesar prōpōnit quae ipse intellegat, et quae civitās querātur. Caesar ei monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspiciōnēs vitet. Sē praeterita

condonāre dicit. Caesar praeterita Divitiacō frātri condonat. Caesar Dumnorigī custodēs pōnit, ut scire possit quae agat, et quibuscum loquātur.



## CHAPTER XX OF CÆSAR

20. Divitiācus, multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus, obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātre statueret: 'Scire sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē doloris capere, proptereā quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscēntiam posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervis nōn solum ad minuendam grātiā sed paene ad perniciem suā ūteretur. Sēsē tamen et amorē frāternō et existimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod si quid ei ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem existimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futurum uti tōtius Galliae animi ā sē āverterentur.' Haec cum plūribus verbis flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prēndit; cōsōlātus rogat finem ōrandi faciat; tantī eius apud sē grātiā esse ostendit uti et rei pūblicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntāti ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorigē ad sē vocat, frātre adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae civitās queratur, prōpōnit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspiciōnēs vitet; praeterita sē Divitiacō frātri condonāre dicit. Dumnorigī custodēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scire possit.

Cæsar  
spares Dum-  
norix but  
places him  
under guard.

**CONCLUSION**

The residue of Cæsar's account of the Helvetian war may be briefly summarized. After the incident last recorded, he follows the enemy for several days, but owing to natural obstructions he cannot gain an advantageous position to check the onward movement. At length lack of food compels him to turn aside to a city westward. The Helvetii mistake this movement for signs of weakening or fear, and in turn become the pursuers, much to Cæsar's unexpected advantage. The change precipitates a battle in which he defeats them with such loss as to preclude further resistance. "The remnant of the once proud and mighty host sadly returned to its mountain home."

*Galli*

The following chapters, bringing the account of the trouble with the Helvetians to a close, were omitted in the earlier edition of this hand-book. They now appear, not merely for artistic unity, — that the student may read without interruption the chronicle of this initial campaign, — but because of the desire of teachers for matter, *immediately at hand*, to test the class in the comprehension and exposition of the original language of Cæsar, without the intermediary aid of the adapted text. Hence, the following text appears *verbatim*, and syntactical references are limited to the most obscure instances.



**21.** Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse milia passuum ab ipsius castris octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēsus, quī cōgnōscerent misit. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et iis ducibus,<sup>79</sup> quī iter cōgnōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōsiliī<sup>80</sup> sit, ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere, quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī rei<sup>7</sup> militāris peritissimus<sup>81</sup> habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.



**22.** Primā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mille et quin-

gentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēni cōgnitus esset,<sup>88</sup> Cōnsidius, equo<sup>43</sup> admissō, ad eum accurrit, dicit montem, quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit,<sup>88</sup> ab hostibus tenērī: id sē ā Gallicis armis atque insignibus cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit. Labiēnus, ut erat ei praeceptum ā Caesare, nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsius cōpiae prope hostium castra visae<sup>94</sup> essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs expectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē<sup>41</sup> per explorātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit et montem ā suis tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum, quod nōn vidisset, prō visō sibi renūtiāsse. Eō diē, quō cōsuērat intervallō, hostēs sequitur et milia<sup>33</sup> passuum tria ab eōrum castris castra pōnit.

His plans are frustrated by the mistake of Considius.



23. Postridiē eius diēi,<sup>102</sup> quod omninō biduum supererat cum exercitui frumentum mētiri oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius milibus passuum XVIII aberat, rei frumentariae<sup>14</sup> prōspiciendum<sup>14</sup> existimāvit; iter ab Helvētiis āvertit āc Bibracte<sup>25</sup> ire contendit. Ea rēs per fugitivōs L. Aemili, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētii, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, eō<sup>81</sup> magis, quod prīdiē superioribus locis occupātis proelium nōn commisissent, sive eō, quod rē frumentariā interclūdī posse cōfiderent,

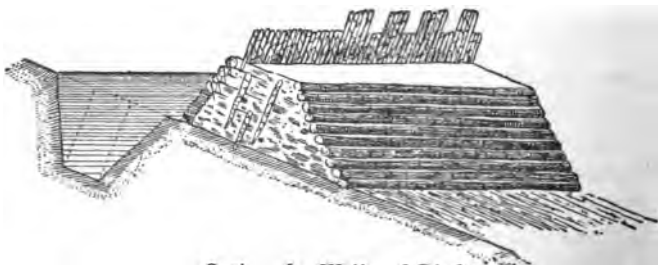
The Romans marching towards Bibracte, are followed and harassed by the Helvetians.



commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere<sup>43</sup> conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine insequi āc lacessere coepērunt.



24. Postquam<sup>59</sup> id animum<sup>22</sup> advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūcit equitātumque quī sustinēret hostium impetum misit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem instrūxit legiōnum<sup>1</sup> quatuor veterānārum; sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōscripserat et omnia auxilia collocāri, āc tōtum montem hominibus complēri, et intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōferri, et eum ab hīs quī in superioriōre aciē cōstiterant mūniri iussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suis carris secūti, impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsi cōnfertissimā aciē,<sup>34</sup> rēiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub primam nostram aciem successērunt.



*Section of a Wall and Ditch*

25. Caesar primum suō deinde omnium ex cōspectū remōtis equis, ut aequātō omnium periculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commisit. Milites ē locō superiōre pilis missis facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiis dēstrictis in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallis māgnō ad pūgnam erat impedimentō quod, plūribus eōrum scūtis unō ictū pilōrum trānsfixis et colligātis, cum<sup>51</sup> ferum sē inflexisset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impeditā satis commodē pūgnāre poterant, multi ut diū iactātō brachiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pūgnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessi et pedem referre et, quod mōns suberat circiter mille passuum spatiō, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostris, Bōii et Tulingī, qui hominum milibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimis<sup>17</sup> praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō aggressi circumvenire; et id cōspicāti Helvētiī, qui in montem sēsē recēperant, rūsus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa<sup>53</sup> signa bipartitō intulērunt: prima et secunda aciēs, ut victis āc submōtis resisteret; tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

The battle.  
The Helvetians are forced to retreat.

26. Ita ancipiti proeliō diū atque ācritē pūgnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alteri sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alteri ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō,<sup>42</sup> cum<sup>52</sup> ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam

They are routed and flee northward. Caesar pursues.

ad impedimenta pūgnātum est, propterea quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcērant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant,<sup>99</sup> et nōnnūlli inter carrōs rotāsque matarās āc trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pūgnātum, impedimentis castrisque<sup>95</sup> nostrī potiti sunt.<sup>96</sup> Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum milia cxxx superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt: nūllam partem<sup>93</sup> noctis itinere intermissō in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepultūram occisōrum nostrī trīduum<sup>98</sup> morāti eōs sequi nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque misit nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent:<sup>70</sup> quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō<sup>99</sup> quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiis eōs sequi coepit.



27. Helvētīi omnium rērum inopiā adducti lēgātōs dē dēditōne ad eum misērunt. Qui<sup>99</sup> cum eum in itinere

**Surrender of  
the Helve-  
tians. Six  
thousand  
escape.**

convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent sup-  
pliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petissent, atque  
eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum  
exspectāre iussisset, pārūrunt. Eō postquam

Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgis-  
sent<sup>90</sup> poposcit. Dum ea conquīruntur et cōferuntur, nocte  
intermissā, circiter hominum milia vi ēius pāgī quī Ver-  
bigenus appellātur, sive timōre perterriti nē<sup>90</sup> armis trāditis  
supplicio afficerentur, sive spē salutis inductī, quod in tantā  
multitūdine dēditiciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut om-  
ninō ignōrārī posse existimārent, primā nocte<sup>108</sup> ē castris

Helvëtiōrum ēgressi ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

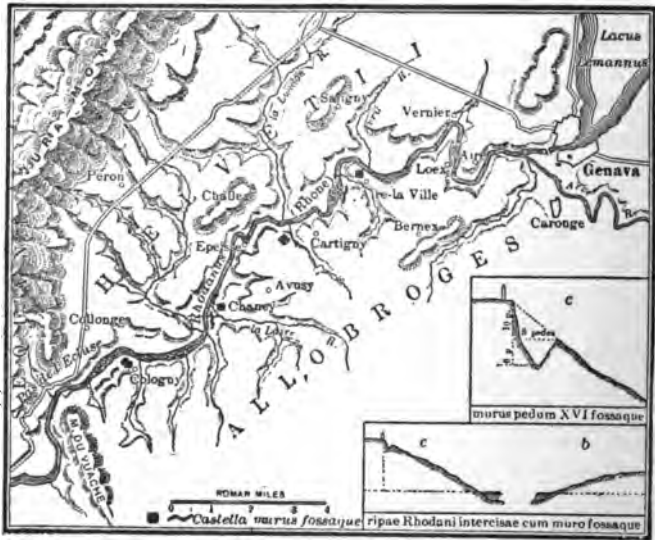
28. Quod<sup>49</sup> ubi<sup>50</sup> Caesar resciiit, quōrum per finēs ierant, his uti conquirerent<sup>48</sup> et redūcerent, si sibi pūrgāti esse vellent,<sup>49</sup> imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armis, perfugis trāditis, in dēditionem accēpit. Helvëtiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profecti, reverti iussit; et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissis domi<sup>50</sup> nihil erat quō<sup>51</sup> famem tolerārent,<sup>50</sup> Allobrogibus imperāvit ut eis frūmenti cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vicōsque quōs incenderant restituere iussit. Id eā māximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvëtiī discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germāni, qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suis finibus in Helvëtiōrum finēs trānsirent<sup>48</sup> et finitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs petentibus Aeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cōgniti, ut in finibus suis collocārent, concessit; quibus illi agrōs dēdērunt, quōsque postea in parem iūris libertātisque condiciōnem atque ipsi erant recēpērunt.

These are retaken and put to death, the rest compelled to return to Helvetia.

29. In castris Helvëtiōrum tabulae repertae sunt literis Graecis cōfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulis nōminātim ratiō cōfecta erat, quī numerus domō exisset<sup>52</sup> eōrum, quī arma ferre possent,<sup>50</sup> et item sēparātim pueri, senēs, mulierēsque. Quārum omnium ratiōnum

summa erat capitum Helvëtiörum milia CCLXIII, Tulingörum milia xxxvi, Latobrigörum xiiii, Rauracörum xxiii, Bōiörum xxxii; ex his, qui arma ferre possent, ad milia nōnāgintā duo. Summa omnium fuērunt<sup>104</sup> ad milia CCCLXVIII. Eörum, qui domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus milium c et x.

**Enumeration of the Helvetians and their allies.**



*Map of Helvetia*

## ENGLISH-LATIN EXERCISES

THE following exercises need no special vocabulary. They are based on Cæsar's text, and are graded to suit the average ability. Beginning with Chapter X, the written parts approach a story quite unlike Cæsar, yet the phraseology is still drawn from the Latin text of the corresponding chapter. A constant effort has been made to keep close to the vocabulary of the special chapter of the lesson; but occasionally, both by purpose and necessity, words and phrases are taken from preceding chapters. These, however, are oft-recurring words, and may not be unreasonably exacted of the pupil's memory. When needful, foot-notes help to the desired word. Moreover, frequent exegetical numbers above the word refer the student, for further help, to the explanatory RULES OF SYNTAX.

The "Written Exercises" may be found too difficult for young classes, in which case easier portions only may be assigned, or entirely omitted, — the "Oral Exercises" being done in writing instead. For older classes, however, and especially for college preparatory students, the strenuous labor of the written parts in full is necessary.



*Sandalia*

## CHAPTER I

## A. ORAL WORK IN CLASS

1. The Garonne was a river in Gaul.
2. It separated the Gauls from the Aquitani.
3. The Belgæ inhabited one part of Gaul.
4. Of all the Gauls the Belgæ were bravest.
5. They were furthest distant from the civilization of the province.
6. The Germans live across the Rhine.
7. They continually wage war with the Helvetians.
8. The Helvetians often wage war in the territory of the Germans who live across the river Rhine.
9. The territory of the Gauls begins at the river Rhone.
10. They are bounded by the Garonne river, the ocean, and the territory of the Belgæ.

## B. WRITTEN WORK

It is said that there were three divisions of Gaul, which were different from one another in language and customs. Of them all, the Belgians were nearest to the Germans, in whose country they often waged war, wherefore they surpassed the rest of the Gauls in valor. The Aquitanians possessed another part which was called Aquitania, and which was near Spain. The third part was inhabited by the Celts, who were called Gauls in the tongue of the Romans, and whose territory began at the Rhone, and sloping northward reached the ocean.

## CHAPTER II

## A. ORAL WORK

1. Orgetorix was very rich.
2. Orgetorix was the most famous among the Helvetians.
3. He was influenced by a greed of royal power.

4. When Messala and Piso were consuls, he formed a plot of the nobles.
5. He easily persuaded the state.
6. The Helvetii are bounded on one side by the Rhine.
7. The river was very wide and deep.
8. It divided the Helvetian land from the Germans.
9. The Jura mountain was very high.
10. The territory of the Helvetians was bounded on a third side by Lake Geneva.
11. They did not roam about widely.
12. They were not able to make war upon their neighbors.
13. The nobles persuaded the state to leave home with all its forces.
14. They said it was<sup>92</sup> easy to become masters of the supreme power of Gaul.

## B. WRITTEN WORK

Orgetorix persuaded the nobles to get possession of Gaul, because their territory, which extended about two hundred miles in length and one hundred in width, was not large. Since he surpassed the others in valor and greed, he formed a plot, when Messala and Piso were consuls, to lead a multitude of men out of their narrow boundaries.



## CHAPTER III

### A. ORAL WORK

1. They were induced by Orgetorix.
2. These things pertain to our departure.
3. They prepare a large number of beasts of burden.
4. A supply of grain was on hand.
5. They made peace with the nearest states.



6. Three of the most powerful (men) of the Helvetians accomplished these things.

7. They deemed two years to be enough.

8. The father of Casticus had possessed the royal power many years among the Sequani.

9. He was a friend of the Roman people.

10. I shall seize the leadership which my father held before.

11. I shall persuade Dumnorix to attempt<sup>48</sup> the same in his state.

12. He gave him<sup>11</sup> his daughter in marriage.

13. They say they will<sup>67</sup> obtain the government of all Gaul.

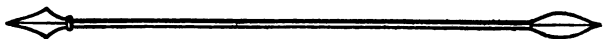
14. There is no doubt but<sup>80</sup> what Dumnorix is<sup>80</sup> the brother of Divitiacus.

### B. WRITTEN WORK

Induced by this speech, the three strongest nations of Gaul give the oath to one another to<sup>a</sup> make all preparations for departure, and in the third year to<sup>a</sup> leave\* their territories and win<sup>a</sup> for themselves the kingdoms across the Rhine. They determined to<sup>74</sup> select Orgetorix to<sup>b</sup> go<sup>c</sup> on an embassy to the nearest states to<sup>48</sup> persuade them to attempt the same thing. He selected Casticus, a Sequanian<sup>79</sup>, and likewise Dumnorix, an Æduan, brother<sup>79</sup> of Divitiacus. They easily achieved their efforts because the Helvetii were very powerful.

*a.* This may be considered indirect discourse or in apposition with *oath*; in either case, use the infinitive. See Rules 67, 79. *b.* Use the relative pronoun; see Rules 48, 94. *c.* Use *suscipiō*. Rule 93.

\* Occasionally simple words and expressions of preceding chapters will be used. To leave = *exire dē* of chap. 2. See Rule 95.



*Hasta*

## CHAPTER IV

## A. ORAL WORK

1. This matter was reported.
2. I shall report it.
3. He reported it to the Helvetii.
4. Orgetorix pleads his cause.
5. They compelled him to plead his case.
6. He will plead his case in chains.
7. He ought to be burned.
8. The penalty did not follow.
9. The day was fixed.
10. He had a great household.
11. He led about ten thousand men to the court.
12. He collected all his vassals and debtors from all parts.
13. He had a great number of these.
14. He will lead them all to the same place in order that he may escape.
15. The state was roused on account of this.
16. Orgetorix escaped, and there was suspicion that he died.

## B. WRITTEN WORK

On the day of the trial, he led about ten thousand men to court, and plead his case. He had a large number of vassals and debtors whom he had gathered from every quarter and had led to the trial in order that he might escape from chains. The public officers had determined to burn him, if<sup>a</sup> condemned. Through his vassals he escaped. The state was roused on this account, and, while the government was collecting men to enforce authority, Orgetorix died.

a. See *Rule of Syntax* 105.

## CHAPTER V

## A. ORAL WORK

1. They had attempted to do this.
2. They do this after his death.
3. They think they are ready.
4. When they are ready they will leave their territories.
5. They had about twelve walled towns.
6. They burned about four hundred villages.
7. They did this to take away all hope.
8. They were better prepared to undergo all dangers.
9. I shall take three months' provisions from home.
10. Each one will do the same.
11. I departed from the village after his death.
12. The Boii lived across the Rhine.
13. They were allies of the three powerful nations.
14. There is no hope of returning home.

## B. WRITTEN WORK

The Helvetii determined to take away all hope of returning home. When they were ready, they ordered each one to burn his buildings and all his grain except what he was going to take from home. There were about four hundred villages and towns. These were all burned. Their neighbors adopted <sup>a</sup> the same plan, burned <sup>b</sup> their towns, and departed with them. After <sup>a</sup> the Boii left home and crossed the Rhine into Gaul, they were persuaded <sup>b</sup> by the Helvetii to depart with them as <sup>c</sup> their allies, to each one of whom the Helvetii gave provisions for three months.

a. See Rule 53, *note*. b. See Rules 14, 30. c. *Socii*, Rule 79.

## CHAPTER VI

### A. ORAL WORK

1. I can leave home.
2. There are two rivers in Gaul.
3. The Rhone is narrow in some places.
4. They will not be able to go through our province.
5. Very few were in the other town.
6. The roads among the mountains were difficult.
7. They have <sup>15</sup> carts in some places.
8. I shall compel you to let me go.
9. He is not well disposed toward us.
10. The route does not seem easy.
11. It is much easier to cross by the bridge.
12. On what day shall you leave town?
13. I think I shall be <sup>21</sup> able to persuade him.
14. Every thing is ready.

### B. WRITTEN WORK

They thought they would go across the river either by a ford, because it was said that there were fords at some places in the Rhone, or by a bridge which was near <sup>77</sup> Geneva. The two routes were easy because they led through territories which had been recently pacified and were well disposed toward them. They appointed a day when they were to meet to decide by which road they might be able more easily to go.



## CHAPTER VII

### A. ORAL WORK

1. It was reported.
2. I shall try to do it.
3. He left the city and hastened home.<sup>25</sup>

4. We have a large number of soldiers in this city.
5. There are altogether ten thousand.
6. I shall inform him of this matter.
7. They sent an embassy to Cæsar.
8. I intend to do no harm.
9. He has obtained a place near the city.
10. Ten legions marched across the bridge.
11. I have no other home.
12. I remember the men.
13. Lucius Cassius was killed.
14. I do not think I ought to allow it.
15. He has an opportunity of making many friends.
16. I shall order them to cut down the bridge.

### B. WRITTEN WORK

After he ordered them to march to the city, they informed him that <sup>66</sup> the bridge had been <sup>92</sup> cut down by the consul's army which had come to Geneva by forced marches. He decided to hasten across the Rhone by another route, because it was said that there were some fords in the river by which he could easily cross. A very large number of Roman soldiers assembled near the banks to keep him back until the consul might have time to send another legion to the ford.

---

## CHAPTER VIII

### A. ORAL WORK

1. I returned from the lake by night.
2. He will give up the attempt.<sup>95</sup>
3. They will not attempt it against my will.
4. I sometimes go to the mountains.

5. When he finished the work,<sup>a</sup> he returned.
6. The wall was ten feet high.
7. I cannot appoint a day for any one.
8. The men who had assembled were driven back.
9. There are rafts on the river.
10. By these fortifications he may be able to keep them back.

### B. WRITTEN WORK

When he returned from the fortifications, which had been constructed from the lake to the river, he assured <sup>a</sup> his men that he would repulse the Roman guards if they should try to keep him back. However, after a time,<sup>b</sup> he lost all hope of marching through the province against Caesar's will, and sending an embassy to the Roman army he asked that he be permitted to do it by Cæsar's consent.

When the latter <sup>c</sup> refused, the Helvetians made many rafts, working <sup>d</sup> often by night, and tried to break through. They were driven back across the river by the charge of the Roman soldiers.

- a. Suīs ostendit* (omit "men").    *b. Use spatium.*    *c. Use is.*  
*d. Omit working.*



## CHAPTER IX

### A. ORAL WORK

1. I can't undertake the matter.
2. He has a friend who is very powerful.
3. The people desire a revolution.
4. He will not go if his friends are unwilling.
5. I am bound by many favors.
6. He married my daughter.

7. He was very powerful in the states.
8. You are our mediator.
9. They will allow us to go.
10. He is our friend.
11. I am willing to send one friend as hostage.<sup>79</sup>
12. I can not allow it of my own will.
13. He wanted to have as many friends as possible among the Gauls.
14. His daughter kept him from the journey.

### B. WRITTEN WORK

I could not voluntarily allow him to marry my daughter, because I knew <sup>a</sup> that he <sup>26</sup> was not a friend of Cassius, to whom I was bound by many favors. Nevertheless, I did not wish to do <sup>d</sup> him wrong, because he was a man <sup>b</sup> of great good will among his people, and had hosts <sup>c</sup> of friends in many parts of the state. One way was left for me. And so I sent Dumnorix to them as mediator, and he, after a few days, arranged matters with no offence.

*a. Use cōgnōscō. b. Omit man. c. Use multitūdo. d. Use iniuriās inferre, and see Rule 13.*



## CHAPTER X

### A. ORAL WORK

1. I shall report it to Labienus.
2. I intend to go with them.
3. The place is not far from the city.
4. There is great danger in the mountains.
5. Warlike people live there.
6. It is an unfriendly land.

7. I know that the Alps are mountains.
8. On account of these things he has enemies.
9. The land beyond the Alps is open.
10. They put Lieutenant Labienus in command of the legions.
11. On the seventh day I shall hurry across the river.
12. He was beaten in two battles.
13. They arrived in the city recently.
14. This is the last day.
15. I shall reach the banks of the river within three days, and thence go across into a hostile land.
16. The Germans were a people beyond the Rhine.
17. He led his army by the nearest route to the province.

### B. WRITTEN WORK

The first day after my journey into Italy, I intended to go to the fortifications which were not far distant, because I had friends there, passing the winter. I myself knew it would be dangerous to go without an escort<sup>a</sup>, for in many places were warlike men who had sometimes beaten us in battle. And yet<sup>b</sup>, I determined<sup>c</sup> to go with a very few soldiers, and although<sup>82</sup> Lieut. Servus tried to keep me from the difficult undertaking, I led five soldiers with me out of camp by night, hastened across a country held<sup>d</sup> by enemies of Rome, and within two days reached the place where my friends were.

*a.* Use *praesidium*. *b.* Use *tamen* of chapter 4. *c.* Use *cōstituō* of chapter 5. *d.* Use *occupō*.



## CHAPTER XI

### A. ORAL WORK

1. I ought to go to Cæsar.
2. There were villages across the river.
3. He has two children left.



4. They reached the territories of the Allobroges on the seventh day.
5. The enemy was ravaging the lands of the Ædui.
6. And so they sent an embassy to Cæsar to ask aid.
7. They will lead an army through the narrow passes of the mountains.
8. They could not defend themselves.
9. I have at all times deserved the aid of my friends.
10. He has possessions beyond the Rhone.
11. They fled to Cæsar.
12. They showed that they were <sup>92</sup> friends.
13. I have nothing left.
14. He was induced by this to go.
15. He decided that he ought to wait.
16. The fortunes of the allies were exhausted.
17. He can't check the violence of the people.
18. The enemy led their forces away into the defiles.
19. I shall inform Cæsar.
20. The enemy is ravaging the land all the while.

### B. WRITTEN WORK

I was almost in sight of the place, when my friends hastened to tell me that two children were being carried away by the enemy, and were by this time among the nearest defiles of the Alps. These children were relatives by blood of my friend Lucius, who was with my brother in Spain; and so I determined that I ought not to wait until I could inform him. And yet I knew it would be very dangerous <sup>a</sup> to go into the mountains without a large escort, for the enemy, it was said, <sup>d</sup> were not few <sup>b</sup>. And so I sent a messenger <sup>c</sup> to the fortifications, which were not far distant <sup>d</sup>, to ask aid. <sup>71, 2</sup>

a. Chap. 10. b. Use *perpauci*. c. Use *nūntius*, -ī. d. Chap. 1.

CHAPTER XII

A. ORAL WORK

1. The river Saône flows into the Rhone.
2. It flows with marvelous smoothness.
3. In what direction does it flow?
4. The Helvetians made many skiffs.
5. They will cross over with rafts.
6. He led three parts of the army across the river.
7. Scouts informed him that a fourth part was this side the Saône.
8. He set out from camp about the third watch.
9. He reached the river.
10. They had not yet crossed over.
11. A large part was killed.
12. Let<sup>44</sup> us hide in the woods.
13. He is called Cæsar.
14. I left home the next day.
15. Brutus killed Cæsar.
16. My father will avenge all wrongs.
17. They were killed in the same battle.

B. WRITTEN WORK

When Lucius left home, he sent his two children to his father-in-law who lived<sup>d</sup> near Aquileia. By chance, the latter<sup>a</sup> departed the next day to private possessions in the open<sup>e</sup> country beyond<sup>f</sup> the walls of the town. The grandfather set out with the children, unsuspecting of danger; for it could not be supposed that there were enemies in a place so near the Roman camp.<sup>19</sup> They had almost reached the banks of the river, which was this side of his possessions, when some bandits,<sup>b</sup> who were hiding, came out of the woods, killed him, and carried the children away<sup>c</sup> to the mountains.

- a. Use *is*. b. Use *latrō, latrōnis*, m. c. Use *abducō* of chap. 11.  
d. Use *incolō*. e. Chap. 10. f. *extrā*, with acc.

## CHAPTER XIII

## A. ORAL WORK

1. The battle was fought in one day.
2. There is a bridge over the Saône.
3. He followed the rest of the forces.
4. I shall lead an army into those places.
5. I did it with the greatest difficulty.
6. Divico was a leader in the Cassian war.
7. He cannot bring aid.
8. I remember the former valor of the Belgians.
9. He did it in one day.
10. He went into that region where the enemy was.
11. I wanted to go on this account.
12. They suddenly crossed the river.
13. I do not attribute our misfortune to his arrival.
14. They fight craftily.
15. I learned this from my father.
16. Let him not despise us.
17. They said they would go.
18. They rely upon ambuscades.

## B. WRITTEN WORK

Their father, as I have said, was in Spain at this time, and so I hastened to bear aid to his children. I knew we must fight craftily with these bandits, for the people of those districts in the mountains rely upon ambuscades rather than valor. They might<sup>a</sup> suddenly attack us, entangled<sup>a</sup> in the defiles of their region. Wherefore, my escort being small,<sup>b</sup> I did not despise the danger. On the arrival of the soldiers from the neighboring camp, we set out. We crossed the river Saône with the greatest difficulty, for there was no bridge there, and

hastened in that direction where my friends said the bandits had gone.

a. Use *impeditus*, and see Rule 105. b. Use *parvus*.



## CHAPTER XIV

### A. ORAL WORK

1. I remember what they said.
2. He mentioned it to me.
3. I am not conscious of any wrong.
4. Let us be on our guard.
5. He did not know what he had done.
6. They were deceived by the enemy.
7. I do not think I<sup>18</sup> ought to be afraid.
8. They were frightened without reason.
9. I cannot forget the insult.
10. They wanted to do it against his will.
11. He boasts arrogantly of his victory.
12. They were accustomed to allow this.
13. It will not be difficult to give hostages.
14. He will do what he has promised.
15. I know Cæsar will make peace with them.
16. He apologized to the Helvetians.
17. They are not accustomed to give hostages.
18. He was a witness of this affair.
19. They did wrong to their comrades.
20. He gave this reply and departed.
21. I shall not grant them freedom from punishment without reason.
22. What did the Roman people promise?
23. If<sup>63</sup> I wanted to forget the wrong, could I?

24. I grieved over it for a time.

25. Let them be on their guard.

### B. WRITTEN WORK

I shall long remember that march to the mountains, across deep rivers, where there were no fords, through woods, where the enemy might be hiding, into the most difficult defiles, amidst great dangers, until<sup>a</sup> we reached<sup>a</sup> suddenly the camp of the bandits. They were excited by our arrival, and were not able to defend themselves. Some<sup>b</sup> were absent from camp, others<sup>b</sup> took to flight<sup>c</sup> into the adjoining woods. They had inflicted wrongs upon the people so long without punishment that they thought they need<sup>as</sup> no longer fear. But they were deceived this time, and were off their guard.

As leader of our band, I spoke to them as follows :

"You were going<sup>d</sup> to carry these children away into bondage,<sup>e</sup> aware of the wrong you were doing to a friend of Gaul. I know he will grieve all the more because he does not deserve this injury. I fain would<sup>e</sup> punish you for this crime, but I will grant you impunity if you give us his children without harm.

"We have come without fear<sup>f</sup> into these deep defiles, far from home and few in number, as you see. We are not afraid. We are Romans. But let us not boast of courage. You are witnesses of this that the immortal gods have granted to us the victory."

*a.* See chap. 7. *b.* Use *aliī . . . aliī*. *c.* See chap. 12. *d.* Use First Periphrastic imperfect of *abducere*. *e.* Use proper mode and tense of *volō*. *f.* Use *timor*. *g.* See chap. 11.



*Iugum*

## CHAPTER XV

## A. ORAL WORK

1. Cæsar had collected cavalry, about <sup>77</sup> four thousand in number.
2. He sent a few allies ahead into the province.
3. The enemy pursued him into an unfavorable locality, and engaged him in battle.
4. A few of the soldiers fell.
5. They followed our rear for fifteen days.
6. Let us send horsemen to see in what direction they are marching.
7. Elated with the victory, the enemy began to stand at times more boldly.
8. They assailed our men in the rear.
9. Cæsar was satisfied for the present.
10. Woods were between the enemy's rear and our van.
11. We had not marched more than fifteen miles.
12. Cæsar kept the enemy from plundering.
13. They pursued us too eagerly.
14. The next day he moved his camp from the unfavorable spot.
15. More than five hundred fell in this battle.

## B. WRITTEN WORK

I wanted to punish the bandits, as I have said, but I considered it enough for the present to depart with the children and my few comrades without harm from that unfavorable locality. And yet, being elated by our sudden victory, I kept my men from battle with the enemy with the greatest difficulty. I saw suddenly that the bandits were beginning to collect their forces and move camp. After we had departed, we halted in a spot in dense woods, where we were hidden, and a scout was

sent to see in what direction they were marching. He reported <sup>a</sup> that they were not following our rear, but were going, about fifteen in number, further <sup>b</sup> into the mountains. Thus we had been frightened without reason, but we kept on our guard until we reached the open country <sup>c</sup>.

*a.* Use *renūntiō* of chap. 10. *b.* Use comparative of *longē*. *c.* See chap. 10.

## CHAPTER XVI

### A. ORAL WORK

1. On account of the cold the grain was not ripe.
2. They demanded a supply of fodder.
3. The river flows toward the north.
4. They promised a large army.
5. We have enough grain.
6. They were not able to use the boats, because they had turned the march aside from the Saône.
7. I do not want to leave you.<sup>95</sup>
8. The Æduans said that corn was being collected.
9. He was delayed longer.
10. The day was pressing on when we must undertake war.
11. There was a large number of boats on the Saône.
12. The chief magistrate among the Ædui was called *vergobretus*.
13. He was frightened because he knew the enemy was so near.
14. Divitiacus was induced<sup>96</sup> by the prayers of his people, and brought up a quantity of grain in boats on the Saône.
15. He complained because he was deserted.

### B. WRITTEN WORK

I lingered day after day in camp with my comrades<sup>a</sup>, and especially with the two little friends who, after the death of the

grandfather, were afraid<sup>b</sup>, and unwilling<sup>c</sup> for me to depart. And yet my affairs at home<sup>39</sup> kept<sup>38</sup> demanding me.

Meanwhile the day was pressing on when<sup>d</sup> I must set out to go to my home. Although the journey was so difficult, yet I decided to take the children with me, for they had neither relatives nor friends in this region<sup>e</sup>. Moreover, the soldiers were going<sup>34</sup> to move camp the next day<sup>f</sup>, and march<sup>34</sup> far towards the north. They promised us an escort, because it was said a large number of bandits was being collected from the mountains and was near by. Yet our guard was enough and we were not afraid.

In the meantime, the chief magistrate of the district<sup>g</sup>, who has power of life and death over his people, reached<sup>h</sup> the camp suddenly, and calling the soldiers together, blamed them severely because<sup>34</sup> they were not assisting him at<sup>43</sup> so critical a time<sup>43</sup> and the bandits<sup>43</sup> so near.

*a. comes, comitis*, m. f., used by Cæsar in Book VI. *b.* For the verb, see chapter 14. *c.* Use *nōlō*, and see Rule 76, b. *d.* Literally, "on which day." *e.* Translate "(in) his locis," and see Rule 39, note. *f.* See chapter 15, first sentence. *g. Pāgus*, -ī, m. *h.* Use *pervenio* of chapter 12, and see Rule 25.



## CHAPTER XVII

### A. ORAL WORK

1. There are some who are very powerful.
2. Dumnorix was wicked.
3. I can<sup>a</sup> prevent them from gathering grain.
4. He wants to gain the leadership, and wrest liberty from<sup>37</sup> the people.
5. He ought not to report our plans to the enemy.
6. I do not doubt but what he knows this.



7. It is better to gain liberty than endure the sway of the Romans.

8. What are the magistrates doing in camp?

9. I reported the exigency to Cæsar.

10. You do not know with how much danger I reported the exigency to him.

11. I cannot control them.

12. He kept silent as long as he could.

a. If this were "I cannot prevent," etc., how would the dependent clause be introduced? See Rule 8o.

### B. WRITTEN WORK

When the soldiers had been called together, among them being Arius, who was in charge of the few troops, the magistrate spoke thus:

"You do not know with what danger I have come into your camp. You see beyond <sup>a</sup> the river a few bandits, as you say, and you think we ourselves <sup>b</sup> ought to be able to deter them from overrunning <sup>c</sup> our towns and fields without your help. If <sup>d</sup> we had been able to do this, my people would not have sent me with <sup>34</sup> their prayers to you. At last I can tell you what before the enemy have forced us to keep secret. I am Lilius, chief magistrate of all this region around you, and I have power of life and death over my people, but there are some who as private citizens are more powerful than I myself. They are collecting these bandits from the mountains and the whole country to gain preëminence and wrest liberty from my people. Wherefore I have come to you to report <sup>71</sup> this exigency and seek <sup>71</sup> help."

a. *ultrâ*, prep. with the acc. b. *nōs ipsōs*. c. Use *vexō* of chapter 14. d. Rule 65.



CHAPTER XVIII

A. ORAL WORK

1. I feel that he means Dumnorix.
2. I am unwilling to speak while too <sup>88</sup> many are present.
3. He is in great favor with the common people.
4. Let us <sup>44</sup> ask about these things of him secretly.
5. I found out by inquiry that he was desirous of a revolution.
6. What did he say in the meeting?
7. He is a man of the greatest boldness.
8. I was among the Bituriges very many years.
9. He has bought up the taxes for very many years.
10. No one will dare to speak boldly in the meeting.
11. He has considerable private property.
12. I found out that he has a wife at home.
13. He gave his mother in marriage to a man there.
14. He has a sister on his mother's side.
15. They hate the Romans because <sup>54</sup> by their arrival their power has been lessened.
16. Cæsar was unwilling for him to be restored to his former place of honor.
17. He has the greatest hope of power and favor among his people.
18. Under the rule of the Romans he despairs of royal power.
19. The cavalry skirmish, which was fought a few days before, was unsuccessful.
20. Dumnorix, who was in command of the reinforcement, started the rout.

B. WRITTEN WORK

*(A special exercise in changing indirect to direct discourse.)*

Arius was in charge of the meeting. He had been in those parts very many years, and had a large number of friends there. Wherefore he was fond of the people, and desired to favor

them on account of this relationship. Thus, Arius was unwilling to dismiss the meeting so quickly. He kept the magistrate, and inquired of him further concerning these matters.

The latter then spoke more freely :

"Among those who are so powerful is Dumnorix, a man of the utmost daring, and in great favor with my people because of his generosity. He is eager for a change of government. For many years he has bought up all the imposts of our district at a small price. When he bids no one dares bid against him. By this he has increased his estates. He always has around him a number of horsemen whom he supports at his own expense. He has abundant influence even among adjoining nations. For the sake of this power, he has given his mother and half-sister and other relatives in marriage to men in many places. He hates the Romans because they have put his brother into a position of honor. Under their rule, he despairs not only of royal power, but even of that favor which he now has among us. By means of his relatives and friends in town and other places, and these bandits of the mountains, he has conceived the highest hope of getting possession of the government."

Lilius, the magistrate, was silent.

Arius promised help. I left the meeting, with the children. I was in despair. I felt that this was the beginning of a great war. Home was very far away.

---

## CHAPTER XIX

### A. ORAL WORK

1. Now,<sup>89</sup> these things were found out.
2. He will lead the hostages through his brother's territory.
3. He had hostages given among the nations.
4. They did this without orders.
5. I think this is sufficient cause.

6. When Cæsar found this out, he ordered the state to punish Dumnorix.
7. Divitiacus had the utmost devotion for the Roman people.
8. He is a man of <sup>86</sup> uncommon prudence.
9. I fear <sup>80</sup> that I may offend his feelings.
10. Before he added certain things to these suspicions, he ordered a meeting to be called.
11. His friend was leader of the province.
12. Cæsar had the utmost confidence in him.
13. What was said by him in your presence?
14. State to me what each one said separately.

B. WRITTEN WORK

When I found out that Arius was going to <sup>84</sup> have aid sent to Lilius, I feared that he might think it to be sufficient cause why he should not give me the escort which he had promised a few days <sup>a</sup> before. So I determined to speak with him concerning it.

When I asked that I might speak with him privately, he ordered me to come to him. Before I was able to say anything, he opposed me, and said :

"You are my intimate friend, Cælius. For many years you have shown eminent loyalty and good will to me. Show it to me at this time, in this present danger. You know what the chief magistrate of the Venetici has said in your presence. Have <sup>b</sup> you no suspicions of the truth? I beg that I may speak freely, without offence to the feelings of a friend. These children are not of Lucius in Spain, but of his brother, the leader of the revolution against the government of Lilius and the Roman people. He loves <sup>c</sup> his children as a father. We shall be able to punish <sup>d</sup> him by retaining <sup>e</sup> them as hostages."

*a.* See preceding chapter. *b.* Introduce the sentence with *nōne*.  
*c.* Use *amō*. *d.* Use *ulciscor* of chapter 14. *e.* Use gerund of *retinēō* of chapter 18.

## CHAPTER XX

## A. ORAL WORK

1. I know it is true.
2. He said he knew it was true.
3. You are very powerful at home.
4. When you were very powerful on account of your generosity, I had little influence because of my youth.
5. He used his powers of mind and body<sup>a</sup> to diminish my influence.
6. They are taking rather<sup>88</sup> harsh measures against my father.
7. In tears<sup>84</sup> he embraced Cæsar.
8. We are all influenced by the opinion of people.
9. I have a brotherly love for<sup>18</sup> you.
10. No one will think it was done by my desire.
11. He is<sup>b</sup> on friendly terms with Cæsar.
12. Stop<sup>c</sup> speaking.
13. I warn you to<sup>48</sup> avoid this in the future.
14. They will pardon him because<sup>18</sup> of his brother's prayers.
15. I shall be able to know what you do<sup>66</sup>.

*a. Use opibus ac nervis. b. Use teneō. c. Be careful of the irregular imperative of faciō.*

## B. WRITTEN WORK

When Arius ceased to speak, I called the children to me to<sup>48</sup> know the truth. My love for<sup>a</sup> them had increased day by day<sup>b</sup>, and I was<sup>c</sup> pained because they had said nothing<sup>d</sup> to me concerning the matter.

After<sup>58</sup> Arius had admitted them, he declared what<sup>66</sup> the chief magistrate censured<sup>98</sup> in their father, and what the state complained of. They began to embrace me and beg that I forgive them because<sup>64</sup> they had so long kept<sup>86</sup> silent about

their father. They said their mother was dead <sup>e</sup>, that their father had another wife <sup>f</sup>, and she was bad <sup>g</sup> to them. In tears they begged of me not to turn from them. I consoled <sup>h</sup> them and asked them to cease weeping.

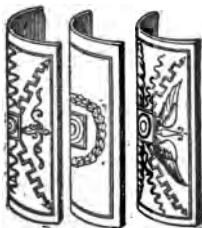
I then <sup>h</sup> grasped Arius' hand, and spoke:

"What you have said I know is true, yet I am stirred by love of these little ones. I beseech you to spare <sup>i</sup> them out of <sup>j</sup> favor toward <sup>l</sup> me."

Arius, my intimate friend, embraced me.

"Thus <sup>j</sup> shall <sup>j</sup> it be, Cælius," he said. "We shall be able to punish the father by other plans. Carry the children with you to your home beyond the mountains. Brotherly love goes with you."

*a.* Use *in* + acc., as in chapter 19. *b.* *in diēs*. *c.* Use *capiō*, as in this chapter. *d.* *nec quidquam*, or *nihil*. *e.* See chapter 4, end. *f.* See chapter 18, middle. *g.* Use *malus*, -a, -um. *h.* *tum*. *i.* Use *cōservō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum. *j.* *sic estō*.



*Scūtā*



# RULES OF SYNTAX

---

NOTE. — References by numbers throughout the body of the texts, both Latin and English, are made to these rules. The pupil should state the rule in full in answering all questions of syntax of the day's lesson.

Occasionally, special days should be given to careful recitation of these rules, the pupils always learning the Latin examples appended, and hunting up others of like character in the text.

A mastery of these rules now will prove sufficient for the entire course in Cæsar.

The consideration of *syntax* directs the mind to the manner or habit of expression of thought, wherein it has a culture value unlike that of the study of *construction*, which looks to the statement of relation of words in a sentence. For illustration :

*ex Galliâ profectus est.*

What is the construction of *Galliâ*? Ans.: It is the ablative case, being introduced by the preposition *ex*.

What is the syntax of *Galliâ*? Ans.: The idea of "place from which" is expressed by the ablative, in accordance with Rule 40.

**Syntax**

**vs.**

**Construction**

## I. OF CASES

### The Genitive

A. With nouns:—

1. Origin, Possession, and Material are expressed by the genitive.

*Catōnis filius est, he is Cato's son.*

or, *libra Caesaris legimus, we are reading the books of Cæsar.*



castra Ariovistī nōn aberant, *the camp of Ariovistus was not far off.*

cōpia frūmentī suppetēbat, *a supply of grain was on hand.*  
or, talentum auri habet, *he has a talent of gold.*

**2. Quality and Measure** of space and quantity are expressed by the genitive, with an accompanying adjective.

[The adjectives used chiefly are *māgnus*, *summus*, *tantus*, and numerals; *zīus* may take the place of an adjective.]

vir summae virtūtis est, *he is a man of the greatest courage.*

ēius modī cōnsultum est, *there is a decree of this sort.*

mūrum sēdecim pedum perducit, *he constructs a wall sixteen feet (high).*

trium mēnsium frūmentum extulērunt, *they took away three months' supply of corn.*

**3. Subjective Genitive** denotes the person who makes or produces something, or who has a feeling.

[The test of this construction is its possible expansion into a sentence of which the genitive is the *subject*; if it is rather the *object*, it falls under Rule 4; e.g., test *amor patris*, *odium Caesaris*, *timōrēs liberōrum*. Sometimes this construction is explained also by other rules.]

Catalinae verba audivit, *he heard Catiline's words.*

**4. Objective Genitive** denotes the object of an action or feeling.

domum reditiōnis spēs sublāta est, *hope of returning home was removed.*

Cicerō laudātor temporis actī erat, *Cicero was a praiser of the past.*

**5. Partitive Genitive** denotes that of which a part is taken.

[NOTE: Cardinals and *quīdam* regularly take the ablative, with *ē* (*ex*); e.g., *ūnus ex militibus*, *quīdam ex lēgātīs*.]

**māgnū mīlitū numerū imperat**, *he levies a large number of soldiers.*

**satis causae est**, *it is sufficient reason.*

**ēius rei populū Rōmānū esse testem dīcit**, *he says the Roman people are witness of this thing.*

**6. Appositional Genitive.** A genitive is sometimes used like a noun in apposition. [See Rule 79.]

**nōmen amīci populī Rōmānī longē aberit**, *the name of friend of the Roman people will not avail.*

**B. With adjectives:—**

**7. Genitive of Reference, or Specification.** Some adjectives require a genitive to specify or limit their application.

[Such adjectives are those meaning *desire, knowledge, memory, fullness, power, sharing, guilt*, and their *opposites*.]

**perītus bellī est**, *he is skilled in war.*

**avidus laudis est**, *he is greedy of praise.*

**C. With verbs:—**

**8. Remembering, Forgetting, Reminding** take the object in the genitive when they signify a *continued state of mind*; the accusative when used of a *single act*.

[The verbs used mostly are **meminī**, **reminīscor**, and **oblīvīscor**. Test the following as to case: "The old man remembers the past"; "I recall the fact"; "He remembers the living"; "He forgot the matter."]

**Sullam meminī**, *I recall Sulla.*

**vivōrum meminī**, *I remember the living.*

**9. Accusing, Convicting, Acquitting** take the genitive of the *charge* and the ablative of the *penalty*.

[The verbs used mostly are **accūsō**, **argūō**; **damnō**, **coargūō**; **absolvō**. Test: "He accuses me of theft" (theft = **fūrtum**, -ī);

"He was condemned for embezzlement" (embezzlement = *peculātus*, -ūs).

*impietātis absolūtus est, he was acquitted of blasphemy.*

**10. Verbs of Feeling or Emotion** take the genitive of the object which causes the feeling — often with the accusative of the person affected.

[This includes *miserere* and *miserescō*; and the impersonals, *pudet*, *paenitet*, *miseret*, *taedet*, *piget*.]

*miserescite hominis, pity the being.*

*pudet mē tuū, I am ashamed of you.*

## The Dative

**A. General use : —**

**11. Indirect Object.** The commonest use is that of the indirect object of both transitive and intransitive verbs to denote the person to whom something is *given*, *said*, or *done*.

*Dumnorigi filiam suam dedit, he gave his daughter to Dumnorix.*

*Caesari respondit, he replied to Cæsar.*

**B. Special uses : —**

**12. Intransitive Verbs**, meaning to *favor*, *help*, *please*, *trust*, and their *opposites*; also, to *believe*, *persuade*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *envy*, *threaten*, *pardon*, and *spare*, take an indirect object in the dative.

*eīs persuāsit, he persuaded them.*

*huic legiōni cōfidēbat, he trusted this legion.*

**13. Compound Verbs.** Most verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con* (= *cum*), *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*, *super* take the dative of the indirect object.

**NOTE:** If the verb is transitive, it may thus govern a double ob-

ject, one accusative (direct), the other dative; e. g., **Labiēnum exercitū praefēcit**, *he put Labienus in command of the army.*

**huic legiōni praefuit**, *he was in command of this legion.*

**14. In the Passive.** Verbs which govern the dative are used *impersonally* when put in the passive voice, the dative remaining unchanged.

**Caesarī respondētur**, *Cæsar is answered.*

**his persuādētur**, *they are persuaded.*

**15. Possession.** The dative is used with *esse* and similar meanings to emphasize the fact of possession.

[NOTE: Compare Rule 1, which emphasizes the possessor. Avoid *habēō*, unless expression of the idea of retention is desired.]

**mihi est canis**, *I have a dog.*

**16. The Agent.** The dative is used with the *gerundive* to denote the one who, under moral obligation or necessity, must fulfill the action expressed by the verb.

[NOTE: This combination of *gerundive* and tenses of *esse* forms the conjugation described in Rule 85.]

**mihi agendum est**, *I must do it.*

**17. Service** is expressed by the dative, usually with another dative of the person concerned.

**māgnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit**, *it was of great service to our men.*

**18 Reference.** The dative of reference denotes the one who has some concern or interest in the matter.

[NOTE: This dative has little or no special grammatical dependence, but rather modifies the whole thought.]

**quid mihi Cæsar agit?** *I am interested in this matter.*  
*What is Cæsar doing?*

**19. With Adjectives.** Adjectives of *likeness, fitness, near-*

*ness, service, and their opposites, often take the dative to specify their application.*

**sunt proximī Germānīs, they are nearest to the Germans.**

*Addendum : Separation (see Rule 87).*

### THE ACCUSATIVE

**20. Double Object — Same Person.** Many verbs of *making, choosing, calling, showing*, and the like, take two accusatives of the same person or thing — one a direct object, the other a predicate accusative, like an appositive.

**Pisōnum cōnsulem creāvērunt, they chose Piso consul.**

**21. Double Object — Person and Thing.** *Asking, demanding, teaching, concealing*, admit two accusatives — one of the person, the other of the thing.

[NOTE: The verbs used mostly are *rogō, postulō, doceō, cēlō*. Here belong also *monēō, cōgō, accūsō, arguō*, which are restricted to a pronoun or adjective object of the thing.]

**tē sententiā rogō, I ask you your opinion.**

**haec Caesarem cēlāvit, he concealed this from Cæsar.**

**22. Double Object — with compound verbs.** Verbs in composition with prepositions, usually *trāns*, sometimes *ad*, and others, may take two accusative objects — one dependent upon the verb, the other upon the preposition.

[NOTE: The preposition is often repeated.]

**legiōnēs pontem trādūxit, he led the legions across the bridge.**

**23. Time and Space.** The accusative is used to express *duration* of time, and *extent* of space.

**multōs annōs in Italiā fuit, he was in Italy many years.**

**flūmen passūs sēscentōs abest, the river is six hundred paces distant.**

**24. Exclamation** is written in the accusative.

**ō fōrtūnātam rempublicam!** *O fortunate republic!*

**25. Limit of Motion** is expressed by the accusative, usually with the prepositions *ad* or *in*.

[NOTE: The preposition is omitted with names of *towns, small islands, domum, and rūs.*]

**in prōvinciam pervēnit,** *he reached the province.*

**Rōmam vēnit,** *he came to Rome.*

but, **ad oppidum Genāvam vēnit.**

**26. Subject of the Infinitive** is in the accusative.

[NOTE: See Rule 72.]

## The Ablative

[NOTE: There were originally in Latin at least seven cases. Two of these, called conveniently the *locative* and the *instrumental*, were afterward dissolved, their uses being assigned to other cases, especially to the ablative. Thus we may easily classify the following kinds of ablative as "Original Ablative" or the *from* case, the "Instrumental Ablative" or the *with* case, and the "Locative Ablative" or the *where* case.]

**A. Original ablative uses:—**

**27. Separation** or privation is expressed by the ablative, usually without the preposition. (See Rule 87.)

**hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt,** *they desisted from this attempt.*  
**armīs hostēs dēspoliāt,** *he deprives the enemy of arms.*

**28. Source.** The verbs meaning *birth* or *origin* are followed by the ablative.

[NOTE: These are usually the participles, *nātus* and *ortus.*]

**Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur,** *the Belgae begin at the extreme territories of Gaul.*

**nōbili genere nātus est,** *he was born of a noble race.*

**29. Cause** is expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition.

*victoriā suā glōriantur, they boast of their victory.*

**30. Personal Agent.** The ablative with *ā* or *ab* is used with a verb in the passive voice to express a *personal agent*.

[NOTE: When the person is regarded as instrument or means of the action, it is written with *per* and the accusative.]

*Galli ā Rōmānis superāti sunt, the Gauls were conquered by the Romans.*

*per indicium enūtiātum est, it was reported through an informer.*

**31. With Comparatives.** The ablative is used after adjectives in the comparative degree, with the sense of *than*.

[NOTE: This is a substitute for *quam*, when the adjective is either nominative or accusative.]

*rēx est potentior cōsule, a king is more powerful than a consul.*

*B. Instrumental Ablative uses:—*

**32. Instrument or Means** is expressed by the ablative, without a preposition.

*Garunnā flūmine continētur, it is bounded by the Garonne river.*

**33. Accompaniment** is expressed by the ablative with *cum*.

[NOTE: In military phrases the preposition may be omitted if the ablative has a modifying adjective.]

*cum his legiōibus ire contendit, he hastened to go with these legions.*

*omnibus cōpiis profectus est, he departed with all his troops.*

**34. Manner** is expressed by the ablative with *cum* or *sine*.

[NOTE: The preposition may be omitted if the ablative has a modifying adjective. Also, distinct words of manner, like *modō*, *ratione*, *fugā*, etc., do not need the preposition.]

**cum celeritāte profectus est**, *he set out swiftly.*

**35. Special Verbs.** *Ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*, and their compounds, take an indirect object in the ablative.

[NOTE: *Potior* may take the genitive instead; e.g., *sēsē Galliae potiri spērant* (chapter 3, last line).]

**eōdem cōnsiliō ūsī sunt**, *they adopted the same plan.*

**36. Quality** is expressed by the ablative, if modified by an adjective.

[NOTE: See Rule 2.]

**summā audāciā erat**, *he was a man of the utmost daring.*

**37. Price** is written in the ablative.

**aedificium parvō pretiō redēmit**, *he bought the building at a small price.*

**38. Specification.** The ablative expresses that *in respect to* which or *in accordance with* which something is or is done.

**virtūte praecēdunt**, *they surpass in courage.*

C. Locative Ablative uses:—

**39. Place where** is expressed by the ablative, usually with *in*.

[NOTE: The preposition is sometimes omitted with *locō*, *castrīs*, *parte*; all words modified by *tōtus*; most names of towns. Here belongs also a remnant of the old locative case, as in the following: *Rōmae*, at Rome; *Rhodī*, at Rhodes; all towns in the singular of the first and second declensions; *domī*, at home; *militiae*, abroad.]

**in Galliā est**, *he is in Gaul.*

**nōnnūllīs locīs vada sunt**, *there are fords in some places.*



**40. Place from which** is expressed by the ablative, usually with *ā* or *ab*, *ē* or *ex*.

[NOTE: In this is the familiar exception of names of towns, etc., as before stated, without the preposition.]

**ex finibus exeunt**, *they go out from their territories.*

**Rōmā vēnit**, *he came from Rome.*

**41. Time when** is expressed by the ablative, without a preposition.

[NOTE: Closely allied to this are expressions which are both time and place. These take the preposition *in*; e.g., *in pace*.]

**eā diē conveniunt**, *they assemble on that day.*

**42. Time within which** is expressed by the ablative, with or without a preposition.

**in tertio annō exibunt**, *they will go out within three years.*

**43. Ablative Absolute.** Independent constructions, consisting commonly of a noun or pronoun and a modifying adjective or participle, often take the place of subordinate clauses of *time*, *cause*, *condition*, and *concession*.

[NOTE: In accordance with the aforesaid meanings, the student should avoid its literal translation, and render by the appropriate English clause.]

Let the student select from the abundance of such constructions in the text examples of the four principal ideas of the ablative absolute.

*Addendum*: Degree of Difference (see Rule 81).

## II. SYNTAX OF MODES

### In Independent Sentences

[NOTE: The mode in independent sentences is regularly **indicative**. The following exceptions are important:

**44. Hortatory Subjunctive.** The subjunctive is used in the present tense to express exhortation (*urging*) or command.

**hōs latrōnēs interficiāmus, let us kill these bandits.**  
**haec dīcat, let him say this.**

**45. Potential Subjunctive** expresses possibility.

**dīcat aliquis, some one may say.**

**46. Optative Subjunctive** expresses a wish, usually preceded by *ut* or *utinam*.

**falsum utinam sit, I hope it is false.**

**47. Dubitative Subjunctive** expresses doubt or deliberation, and indignation.

[NOTE: This is interrogative in form, but rhetorically declarative.]

**quid dicerem, what was I to say?**

## Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses

[NOTE: For "Sequence of Tenses" see Rule 93.]

**48. Purpose** is written in the subjunctive, usually after *ut* or *nē*, and the *relative* pronoun.

[NOTE: The student is sometimes inclined to confuse this with the idea of *result*; e.g., in chapter 6, book I, from *vel* to *paterentur*. In the explanation of the syntax of this particular passage even eminent commentators disagree. One authority calls it *result*, another, *purpose*. The test usually applicable is this: "Is the action of the main verb directed toward the future?" If so, the idea is rather *purpose*.

For other ways of expressing purpose, see Rules 71 and 78.

The student should translate the clause of purpose by the English infinitive.]

**lēgatiōnēs misit ut agrōs vāstārent, he sent the legions to lay waste the fields.**

**49. Result** is written in the subjunctive, usually after *ut* or *ut nōn*, and the *relative* pronoun.

[NOTE: If the main clause is negative, *quān* usually takes the place of *ut nōn* (see Rule 80).]

**mōns impendēbat ut trānsire nōn possent, a mountain overhung so that they could not go across.**

**50. Characteristic.** Occasionally, the logical connection of a *relative* clause is to define some quality or characteristic of its antecedent. This is called a "relative clause of characteristic," and is written in the subjunctive. Otherwise, the mode is indicative.

[NOTE: The test of mode may be this: May the words "of the sort that" be reasonably inserted before the relative, then the clause is *characteristic*.

Three of the following are of characteristic. Find them: "There were some who pitied Cæsar"; "Let us compel a peace which shall have no plots"; "There are studies which sharpen the wits"; "This is He who is called King of the Jews."]

**51. Cum Causal.** *Cum* often introduces a clause of cause, the verb of which is subjunctive.

**quæ cum ita sint, now, since this is so, . . .**

**52. Cum Concessive.** *Cum*, in the sense of "though," introduces a clause of concession, whose verb is subjunctive. The main verb usually has *tamen*.

**cum primī concidissent, tamen reliquī resistēbant, though the first had fallen, yet the rest resisted.**

**53. Relative Time — Cum.** *Cum*, in the sense of "while" and "after," introduces a clause of relative time, whose verb is subjunctive.

[NOTE: The tenses are imperfect, to express "while"; pluperfect, "after."]

**cum Cæsar in Galliā esset, while Cæsar was in Gaul.**

**cum Cæsar in Galliā pervēnisset, after Cæsar had arrived in Gaul.**

**54. Quod Causal.** *Quod, quia, quoniam*, all meaning "since," often introduce reasons which are given on another's authority, not that of the writer or speaker.

[NOTE: By this use, the writer disclaims all responsibility. The reason being thus indirectly quoted, the clause is properly subject to the rules of indirect discourse. See Rule 68.]

**quod sit dēstitūtus queritur**, *he complains because, as he says, he has been deserted.*

**55. Dum, Dōnec, Quoad** sometimes take the indicative of actual event in the past, but often their idea is of *purpose, doubt, futurity* of a contingent event. The mode is then subjunctive.

[NOTE: Test this for mode: "I was happy until he came."]

**Caesar expectāvit dum nāvēs convenirent**, *Cæsar waited until the ships should assemble.*

**56. Indirect Question.** The indirect quotation of a direct question is in the subjunctive.

[NOTE: The question is made the object of a verb of *asking, telling*, and the like.]

**quid sentiō**, *what do I think?*

**quid ipse sentiam expōnam**, *I will explain what I think.*

*Addendum: Subjunctive of Fearing.* (See Rule 90.)

### Special Functions of the Indicative

**57. Cum Temporal — Present.** When *cum* introduces a clause of time in the *present* or the *future*, it takes the indicative.

**cum vidēbis, tum sciēs**, *when you see, then you will know.*

**58. Absolute Time — Cum.** *Cum*, in the sense of "when," sometimes merely defines the *time* in the past at which something was or was done. It then takes the indicative mode of "absolute time."

[Note: For "relative time," *i.e.*, defining the *circumstances* or *conditions* under which something was or was done, see Rule 53.]

**pāruit cum pārēre necesse erat, he obeyed when it was necessary.**

**59. Absolute Time — Other Conjunctions.** *Postquam* or *posteaquam*, after: *ut, ubi*, when or whenever; *cum primum, simul, simul ac, simul atque*, as soon as, introduce clauses of absolute time, and take the indicative.

[NOTE: The tense is usually perfect or "historical" present, although *ut* and *ubi*, in the sense of "whenever," take the pluperfect.]

**Caesar, cum primum potuit, ad exercitum contendit, as soon as he was able, Cæsar hastened to the army.**

**id ubi dixisset, hastam mittēbat, whenever he said this, he hurled a spear.**

**60. Causal.** The conjunctions *quod, quia, quoniam, quando* usually take the indicative of cause.

[NOTE: For exception, see Rule 54.]

**quod altissimi sunt muri, Caesar multōs diēs morābitur, because the walls are very high, Cæsar will linger many days.**

## Conditional Sentences

[NOTE: There is a two-fold classification of conditions; the one, called "simple," offering no hint of the truth or falsity of the condition; the other necessitating a distinct supposition of the fulfilment or non-fulfilment of the condition. For purpose of distinction, we may call the latter kind "complex," since it is varied in form, and requires perhaps more careful analysis.

There are two parts in every complete conditional sentence; the one, called *protasis*, being subordinate and containing the condition; the other, called *apodosis*, containing the conclusion.

The conjunctions usually employed to introduce the *protasis* are

*sī*, if; *nisi*, unless; *sīn*, but if. The apodosis is often introduced by *sic*, *ita*, *tum*.

Often the protasis is omitted, but implied, and sometimes the whole structure is mixed and confusing.]

**61. Simple Condition.** If the protasis offers no means to enable one to determine its truth or falsity, the condition is called simple, and the mode of both parts is indicative.

[NOTE: The English sentence above is an illustration of such a condition. See Rule 68.]

*sī fortis est eum laudō, if he is brave, I praise him.*

**62. Future Condition — “More Vivid.”** If the future fulfilment of the condition is regarded as *probable*, that is, as actually going to happen, the future indicative is used in both clauses.

[NOTE: The future perfect is used in the protasis if its accomplishment is to precede the result.]

*sī pugnābit, tum eum laudābō, if he fights, then I shall praise him.*

*Caesar pacem faciet, sī hostēs obsidēs dederint, Caesar will make peace if the enemy will have surrendered hostages.*

**63. Future Condition — “Less Vivid.”** If the fulfilment of the condition is regarded as *improbable*, the present subjunctive is used in both clauses.

*mentiar, sī negem, I should lie if I should deny it.*

**64. Contrary to Fact — Present.** Often the supposition is known to be false, then the imperfect subjunctive is used in both clauses, when the condition still exists.

*sī amīcī mei adessent, laetus essem, if my friends were present, I would be happy.*

**65. Contrary to Fact — Past.** In a known false condition of past time, the pluperfect subjunctive is used in both clauses.

**nial tū amīssāē, nunquam recēpisse, unless you had lost it, I should never have recovered it.**

### Indirect Discourse

**66. Indirect Discourse** is the expression of another's thoughts without regard for his exact words.

[NOTE: The incalculable advantage of this device of speech was slow to occur to the human mind. It is comparatively recent in the history of language, being found for the first fully developed in the Greek and Latin. Of the earlier tongues, only the Sanscrit has the germ of it. To-day, in common speech, it is universal.

For an extended illustration of the application of the following rules in the change of discourse, see the text of chapter 17, second part.]

**67. The Infinitive.** The main verb of the direct discourse becomes infinitive when written indirectly.

[NOTE: The infinitive clause is always the object of a verb—whether present or implied—of *saying, telling, etc.*]

**miles est fortis** (direct).

**dixit militem esse fortem** (indirect).

**68. Subordinate Clauses** are regularly subjunctive in indirect discourse.

[NOTE: Sometimes the student will find them indicative; the clause may then be regarded as an insertion of the writer or speaker—as given on his own authority—and hence not an integral part of the quotation.]

Let the pupil select examples from the text.

**69. Real Questions** become subjunctive in indirect discourse.

[NOTE: "Real" questions, which are used to obtain information, are opposed to "rhetorical" questions, which are really declarative in meaning. The latter are treated as declarative, and thus fall under Rule 67; as in chapter 14, sixth sentence, *quod . . . posse.*]

**quid tibi vis?** *what do you wish?*

**Ariovistus Caesari respondit: quid sibi vellet,** *Ariovistus asked Caesar what he wanted.*

**70. The Imperative** becomes subjunctive in indirect discourse.

[NOTE: The negative remains *nē*. Chapter 13 contains several illustrations.]

**Diviciō Caesari dixit: nē suae virtutī tribueret,** *Divico told Caesar not to attribute it to his (Caesar's) valor.*

(Let the student give the original command in the last sentence.)

**70a. Addendum: Tenses** in indirect discourse, see Rule 93.

### III. ADDENDA

**71. Purpose Constructions.** There are found eight distinct ways of expressing the idea of purpose. Of the following, the first two are the most common, and the first six not infrequent. The seventh is used only after intransitive verbs. The last is quite rare, late, and not in Cicero.

In all of them, the purpose construction is best translated into English by the infinitive; as, "to attack the city" (see *Note* in Rule 48).

a. By *ut*, etc. (see Rule 48).

b. By the *relative* clause (Rule 48).

c. By *ad* and the *gerundive*.

**venērunt ad urbem oppugnādam.**

d. By *causā* and the genitive of the *gerund*, or the genitive of a noun or pronoun.

**venērunt urbem oppugnāndī causā.**

e. By *causā* and the genitive of the *gerundive*.

**venērunt urbis oppugnāndae causā.**



*f.* By the *supine* in *-um*, after verbs of motion.

**venērunt urbem oppugnātum.**

*g.* By *ad* and the *gerund*, after intransitive verbs.

**venērunt ad urbem oppugnāndum.**

*h.* By the *future participle*.

**venērunt urbem oppugnātūrī.**

**72. Historical Infinitive.** Sometimes, to give the impression of rapid movement of events in narration, the infinitive is used instead of a past indicative.

[NOTE: Its subject is nominative; see Rule 26.

For example, see the text of chapter 16, first sentence, *flāgitāre*.]

**73. Superlative of Eminence** denotes a very high degree of a quality, when no distinct comparison is present.

**Rhēnus altissimus est, the Rhine is very deep** (chapter 2).

**73a. NOTE:** With *quam* or *vel*, the superlative denotes the very highest possible degree; as,

**quam maximae cōplae adsunt, as many troops as possible are present.** (See, also, chapter 7.)

**74. Complementary Infinitive** expresses an additional action or state of the same subject, thus completing the meaning of the main verb.

**Rōmā proficiēscī mātūrat, he hastens to depart from Rome.**

[NOTE: Let the pupil analyze this sentence with careful reference to the above definition.]

**75. The Latter Supine** (in *-ū*) is used with certain adjectives, nouns, and verbs, as an ablative of specification.

[NOTE: The adjectives commonly found are those meaning *easy* or *difficult*, and those with reference to effects produced on the senses or feelings. The verbs found are about twenty-five in number,

and include prominently *audītū, dictū, factū*. The nouns are *fās, nefas, opus*.]

*perfacile factū est, it is very easy to do* (literally, *it is very easy with respect to the doing*—see Rule 38).

*foeda sunt audītū, it is shocking to hear.*

**76. Infinitive as Subject or Object.** These are the usual constructions of the infinitive. For an exception as to use, see Rule 72.

*a. As Subject:* The predicate is usually some form of *esse* or an *impersonal* verb; as,

*eum poenam sequi oportet, the penalty ought to follow him.*

*b. As Object:* This use is of a two-fold kind: the one, described in Rule 74; the other being chiefly that described in Rule 67, note.

In addition, the following verbs take the infinitive as direct object: *iubeō*, to order; *vetō*, to forbid; *patior* and *sinō*, to allow; *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, *cupiō*; as,

*signa inferri iubet, he orders the standards to be advanced.*

**77. The Preposition Ad**, with the accusative, expresses the idea of “near,” in number or place.

*oppida sua, numerō ad duodecim, incendunt, they burn their towns, about twelve in number.*

*pōns ad Genāvam erat, there was a bridge near Geneva.*

**78. Quō** introduces a clause of purpose, when the clause contains a comparative.

*castella commūnit, quō facilius eōs prohibēre possit, he fortifies redoubts in order to check them the more easily* (chapter 8).

**79. Apposition.** A noun which closely follows and explains another noun agrees with the latter in case, and is called an “appositive.”

**opera Cicerōnis ōrātōris legimus, we are reading the works of Cicero, the orator.**

**80. Quīn** introduces a clause of result after *negatived* ideas of "doubt," "hinder," "prevent," and "resist."

[NOTE: The following are common in this construction: *dubium est, impediō, dēterreō*. An exception to this, usually, is *prohibeō*, which takes an infinitive object, instead of the *quīn* clause. For example, see Rule 86.]

**nōn dubium est quīn hōc fēcerit, there is no doubt he has done this.**

**nihil impedit quīn veniat, nothing hinders his coming.**

**81. Degree of Difference.** The ablative is used with comparatives and words denoting comparison to express measure or degree of difference.

[NOTE: The words of comparison usually found are *post, ante, infra, suprā*.]

**proelium paucis ante diēbus factum est, a battle was fought a few days before** (chapter 18, last sentence).

**82. Predicate Noun or Adjective** is one used after *esse*, or similar meanings, to complete the sense, and agreeing with the subject in case.

**populus Rōmānus testis est, the Roman people is witness. flūmen est lātum, the river is wide.**

**83. Coördinate Participle.** The perfect passive participle is sometimes used when the English would rather employ a coördinate clause.

**Caesar suās legiōnēs coāctās praemissit, Cæsar collected his legions and sent them forward.**

**84. Periphrastic Conjugation — Active.** The future participle may be combined with all forms of *esse* to denote what is or was likely or going to happen at any time.

**castra mōtūrī erant, they were going to move camp.**

**85. Periphrastic Conjugation — Passive.** The gerundive may be combined with all forms of *esse* to denote moral obligation and necessity.

For further explanation and example, see Rule 16.

**86. The Imperfect Tense.** Besides its regular significance of continued past state or action, the imperfect expresses the ideas of *habitual*, *repeated*, and *attempted* action.

[NOTE: The latter use is called the "conative."]

*ad montēs ibam, I used to go to the mountains.*

*frūmentum flāgitābat, he repeatedly demanded grain.*

*hostēs nostrōs prōgredi prohibēbant, the enemy tried to keep our men from advancing*

[NOTE: For the construction with *prohibēbant*, see Rule 80, note.]

**87. Personal Separation.** The dative of persons is used as the indirect object of verbs of "taking away" and the like, the thing taken being made the accusative object.

[NOTE: Compare this with Rule 27, in which the person is the direct object.]

*nihil tibi detrāxit senectūs, old age has taken nothing from you.*

**88. The Comparative** has sometimes a special significance in expressing the idea of a *considerable* or *undue* degree of a quality, and may then be translated by "rather," "somewhat," "too."

*senectūs est loquāclor, old age is rather talkative.*

*iuventūs est audāclor, youth is too bold.*

**89. Copulative Relative.** Sometimes the relative pronoun begins a sentence, and serves to connect it closely to the preceding narrative.

*quae omnia ab his facta sunt, now, all these things were done by them.*

[NOTE: Let the pupil notice that the relative is then translated by "now" and a *demonstrative* pronoun.]

**90. Verbs of Fearing** take the subjunctive with *nē*, "lest," and *ut*, "that not."

[NOTE: This apparent anomaly in the use of the conjunction is explained by the fact that originally the subordinate clause was regarded as an independent optative subjunctive. — See Rule 46.]

*timeō nē veniat, I fear he will come* (originally, "I am afraid. May he not come!").

**91. Future Infinitive Periphrasis.** Verbs which have no supine lack the future infinitive. Hence a substitute is necessary. Usually this substitute is also used instead of the regular infinitive in the passive voice of any verb. The substitute is *fore ut* or *futūrum esse ut*, with a subjunctive of result.

*spērō fore ut tē paeniteat levitātis, I hope you will repent of your fickleness.*

*spērō futūrum esse ut hostēs vincantur, I hope the enemy will be conquered.*

[Let the student translate: "Cæsar said he would demand hostages," using the verb *poscō*.]

**92. Tenses of the Infinitive** in indirect discourse may be readily determined by returning the discourse to its original direct speech. This shows the original tense, and the infinitive must preserve it. The only difference is in the past tenses, in which case the perfect infinitive serves a threefold use — representing the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect tenses.

[Let the student follow the above direction, and determine the tenses of the infinitives in the following:—

"He says that he has come."

"He said that he would come."

"He will say that he came."

"He saw that the soldiers were brave."

"He thought that the enemy had gone."]

**93. Sequence of Tenses.** In complex sentences, a "principal" tense of the main clause is followed by a "principal" tense of the subordinate clause; an "historical" tense is likewise followed by an "historical."

[NOTE: The "principal" tenses are those denoting present and future time, embracing the *present*, *future*, *present perfect*, and *future perfect*. The "historical" tenses are those denoting past time, embracing the *imperfect*, *historical perfect*, and *pluperfect*, and often an "historical" present.

Let the pupil examine various complex sentences in the text, with reference to the foregoing law.]

**94. Subjunctive by Attraction.** Sometimes a verb which would regularly be indicative is written in the subjunctive under the influence of the infinitive or subjunctive verb upon which it depends, especially when the two clauses form one complex idea.

For example, see chapter 27, second sentence, *quō tum essent*.

**95. Ā, ab, dē (dis), ē, and ex,** in composition with verbs, take the ablative without a preposition if the idea of separation is figurative; in literal or actual separation or motion the preposition accompanies the ablative.

[NOTE: See Rules 27 and 40, of which this is a part.]

*oñātū dēstunt, they desist from the attempt.*

*dē prōvinciā dēcessit, he withdrew from the province.*

**96. Imperfect vs. Historical Perfect.** The imperfect is the tense of description; the perfect, of narration. The former describes a situation; the latter advances the narration of events.

**97. Hendiadys** is a figure of syntax consisting of two nouns in coördinate construction, one of which is logically dependent.

*fidem et iūs iurandum dant, they give the oath of allegiance.*

**98. Dative with Special Verbs.** The dative is used as the object of *libet*, *licet*, and compounds of *satis*, *bene*, and *male*.

*id nobis facere licet*, we are allowed to do this.

*mihi ipse nunquam satisfaciō*, I never satisfy myself.

**99. Personal Instrument or Means** is expressed by *per* with the accusative.

*Caesar certior factus est per lēgātōs*, Caesar was informed through envoys.

**100. Substantive Clauses** are those which are used like nouns, as subject or object, or in apposition.

[NOTE: Such clauses are usually *infinitive*, *subjunctive* of purpose or result, *indicative* with **quod**, *indirect question*.

For example, see chapter 10, second sentence, *ut . . . haberet*.]

**101. Greek Accusative.** The *synecdochical* or Greek accusative of specification is found in Latin — frequently in poetry, occasionally in prose.

Examples in prose: —

*id temporis*, as to that time.

*quod si*, but if (literally, as to which, if).

**102.** The genitive occurs with *causā*, *grātiā*, "for the sake of"; *ergō*, "because of"; *īnstar*, "like"; *prīdiē*, "the day before"; *postrīdiē*, "the day after"; *tenu*, "as far as."

Authorities differ in the technical assignment of this genitive; some call it simply "subjective," others "partitive." Logically neither seems wholly satisfactory.

**103. The Adjectival Partitive.** Superlatives and some comparatives of adjectives expressing the idea of order, rank, or succession, also *medius*, *cēterus*, and *reliquus*, mean not *what object*, but *what part* of it.

*primā nocte*, in the first part of the night.

**104. Logical Agreement of the Verb.** Sometimes the verb agrees not with its grammatical subject, but with the subject appositive or a predicate noun, serving as the *logical* subject.

*summa omnium fuērunt, they were in all.*

**105. The Adjectival Participle.** The participle is often the equivalent of a subordinate clause or phrase, expressing *time, cause, condition, concession, manner, and means.*

*damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat, if condemned, he must suffer punishment.*



*Pōns ā Cuesare in Rhēnō factus*





## NOTES

---

### BEING MAINLY GEOGRAPHICAL AND HISTORICAL

**Caesaris commentarii** is the proper title of the complete account of Cæsar's campaigns as proconsul of Gaul, from the spring of 58 B.C., when on his arrival he began his operations against the Helvetii, to 52 B.C., when he won his memorable victory over Gaul, united under the intrepid Vercingetorix, "the greatest of the Gauls, the first national hero of France." These seven campaigns were written by Cæsar himself, and the account is popularly called the "seven books of the Gallic war." Each "book" is a concise chronicle of one year. The short interim, from the fall of the town of Alesia in 52, when, as Plutarch says, "Vercingetorix came out of the gate, threw off his armor, and sat quietly at Cæsar's feet," to the last futile rally of the Gauls in the southwest, is narrated in the eighth and final book by one of Cæsar's officers and friends, Hirtius Pansa.

As present and indubitable testimony of the fact of these closing experiences of the great commander, it is pertinent to state here that about 1865 the government of France made extensive investigations on the site of old Alesia, and in these excavations innumerable relics and traces of the siege were found. Camps, redoubts, trenches, staked pits, and coins, swords, spear-heads and other articles, testify not alone to the truth but the accuracy of Cæsar's account of this siege, which is "one of the most remarkable on record, and which may well rank among the decisive military operations of the world's history."

### SUPPLEMENTARY READING ON THE BELLUM HELVETICUM

Froude's Cæsar, pp. 214-231.

Fowler's Julius Cæsar, Chap. 8.

Guizot's History of France, Vol. I, pp. 47-51.

Merivale's History of Rome, Vol. I, pp. 237-262.

Mommsen's History of Rome, Vol. IV, pp. 289-295.

Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II, Ch. 3.

Plutarch's Lives, Cæsar.

Trollope's Cæsar's Commentaries, Chap. 2.

## THE HELVETIAN WAR

### CHAPTER I

**Gallia**, or Gaul, may be regarded roughly as the region now covered by France. More particularly, it was the section of continental Europe west of the Alps and the Rhine, including Switzerland, and north of the Pyrenees mountains. To this may be added the land below the Alps, which Cæsar calls *Gallia citerior*, and which the northern tribes of Europe, some five hundred years before, had overrun, not stopping short of the sack of the great Rome itself.

Notice carefully that Cæsar sometimes speaks of *Gallia* as merely one of the three divisions of "Gaul as a whole."

**Belgae, Aquitani, Celtae**: These nations are represented to-day by the Welsh, Basques of northwestern Spain, and the Irish and Highland Scotch, respectively.

**The Belgae**: The Belgian tribes commonly claimed German origin. Strabo calls them *γερμανικόν ἔθνος*, a "Germanic people." And Hirtius, in the Eighth Book, says, "They are not much different from the Germans."

**The Celtae**: These are the people whom the Romans meant especially when they spoke of Gauls. In Cæsar's time they had fallen from the position of headship of all France to a third part in the territorial division which he describes. They called themselves "Children of Night," whence the origin of our expression *fortnight* and *se'nnight*—in accordance with the Gallic manner of reckoning time by night. Modern scholars have learned a little of their language from proper names and inscriptions, which show them to be a branch of the Aryan race, which swept westward from Asia over Europe long before the time of Greece or Rome. For the English

meaning of some Celtic proper names, see the Vocabulary of this book.

**Mercatores**, or "Italian traders": Cæsar tells us that the Belgians were yet untouched by Roman civilization, they being too remote for the visits of the Italian traders, coming up from Marseilles along the natural highway of the Rhone, the Saône, and then the Loire. But upon the great and open central portion, the land of the Celts, was being dumped, from pack-horse, mule, or cart, every luxury of the Roman epicure—and with it all, slowly, the attendant vices. The most common article of traffic was the sparkling southern wines, for which, it is said, these people would barter their sons.

Thus Rome was waging a double-headed warfare of arms and debauchery. The one followed the ravages of the other, and already in Cæsar's day the former bold and hardy tribes of Gaul, that "once magnificent people, were in a state of change and decomposition."

In order that the pupil may understand better the environment of the people against whom Cæsar planned and executed his victorious campaigns, we quote here a few lines from *Froude*:

"The Gauls had yielded to contact with the Roman Province. They had built towns and villages. They had covered the land with farms and homesteads. They had made roads. They had bridged rivers, even such rivers as the Rhone and the Loire. They had amassed wealth, and had adopted habits of comparative luxury, which, if it had not abated their disposition to fight, had diminished their capacity for fighting.

"The chief was either hereditary or elected, or won his command by the sword. The mass of the people were serfs. The best fighters were self-made nobles, under the chief's authority. Every man in the tribe was the chief's absolute subject; the chief, in turn, was bound to protect the meanest of them against injury from without. War, on a large scale or a small, had been the occupation of their lives. When the call to arms went out, every man of the required age was expected at the muster, and the last comer was tortured to death in the presence of his comrades as a lesson against backwardness."

Thus we see a rude resemblance to feudalism.

**Oceano**: This means the Atlantic, and especially that part adjacent to France, now called the Bay of Biscay.

## CHAPTER II

**Orgetorix** : He first suggested his scheme in B.C. 61, three years before Cæsar's appearance in Gaul. This date is confirmed by a sentence in the next chapter. Note how the Romans expressed dates, viz., by designating the consuls of the particular year.

**loci natura** : "These bold, hardy mountaineers occupied modern Switzerland."

**provinciam nostram** : See Vocabulary.

**pro multitudine** : The population of Helvetia, as given by Cæsar in chapter 29, was only 263,000. As the same region now has a population of about three millions, the fact of over-crowded conditions must be disregarded in accounting for the migration. Rather is it attributable to the increasing encroachment of the Germans, and the report of broad, fertile fields far to the west along the shores of the Bay of Biscay between the Garonne and the Loire. Above all is the fact of their inherent unrest, as shown by the escapades of previous generations; their part in the Cimbri invasion, their alliances with the Teutons on lesser occasions, their campaigns of fire and sword down the Rhone. The disaster at Aix, forty years before, was now forgotten, and time was ripe for another outbreak. This is rather the natural explanation of their desire for new homes.

**in latitudinem** : The *Jahrbücher für classische Philologie* suggests that Cæsar wrote LXXX, and this was changed to CLXXX by mistake of some early copyist. The region in question measures 80 Roman miles in width, instead of 180, as given. The Roman mile, or "a thousand paces," is about .9 of the English mile, or 4,854 feet. The *passus* is 4 feet 10 $\frac{1}{4}$  inches.

## CHAPTER III

**regnum obtinuerat** : Catamantaloedis had formerly held the chieftaincy among his people. His son, Casticus, was induced to make an effort to secure the same position for himself. From this we infer that the chief authority was no longer hereditary, but elective or won by the sword or political chicane.

**principatum** : A close distinction is drawn by some authorities

between this word and *regnum*. The latter was distinctly political, necessarily involving official position and authority, a power conferred by the tribe. The *principatum* was the prerogative of one born to rank and wealth, being a position of prominence without constitutional or official power. This distinction seems to be confirmed by the case of Dumnorix. He already possessed the *principatum*, and was induced to try for the *regnum*, that is, the political sovereignty. (See notes to chapter 19, *principatum*.)

**regna**: The plural is used because the political sovereignty of three states is meant.

**tres populos**: Helvetii, Ædui, Sequani.

#### CHAPTER IV

**Ea res**: The conspiracy.

**Ex vinculis**: "In chains."

**damnatum . . . oportebat**: Note that Cæsar omits *cum*, which is the implied object of *sequi*, the whole being the subject of the impersonal verb.

**igni**: Barbarous and inhuman practices seem to have been not uncommon among the Gauls. See the quotation from Froude, in Chapter I, last sentence. Human sacrifice was sometimes offered in religious ceremony. Fire was the common fate of traitors.

**suam familiam**: The meaning of this is now a mooted question. The derivation of this word, from *famulus*, "servant," seems to show plainly that it means a gang of servants or slaves, rendered by the one word "household." Cæsar's sentence is then properly constructed, for the clients and debtors are separate and additional members of the entire retinue of Orgetorix, and not to be considered a part of the *familia*. If not so, then his sentence is carelessly written. The latter fact is sometimes argued.

**clientes**: Retainers or devoted followers, whom oath and sacred custom compelled to follow their chief, like the vassal of the middle ages. Cæsar here uses a Latin word which to the Roman gave at once a clear idea of that relationship of lord and vassal which reached its fullness of growth in mediæval times; for it existed in Rome as well as Gaul under the name of client and patron. Thus Cæsar does not enter into explanation of the matter, for he knows his

people are already familiar with it at home. In a subsequent book, however, he again mentions this institution, and shows especial interest in a peculiar feature of it. In Book III, Chapter 22, Cæsar tells us that when Crassus was campaigning in the southwest and besieging an Aquitanian town, a certain leader of the enemy came rushing out from another less well-guarded part of the town, accompanied by six hundred devoted followers called *soldurii*. Cæsar's brief account of the condition of these retainers is valuable. He says they enjoy all the advantages of life with him to whose service they are sworn, and if misfortune befalls him, they suffer the same fate or commit suicide. Cæsar adds that never in human memory has a *soldurius* refused death after his master. This relationship was the natural, perhaps inevitable, growth of a time when might was right, and the rule that only of the strong. It is a mark of a higher civilization than that of the past, that we have been able to devise a better social order than that of vassalage.

**se eripuit** : Exactly how he effected this is not explained. Some commentators say that the large retinue of the accused man awed the court to silence.

**multitudinem cogerent** : See again the extract from Froude, in regard to the mustering of men (Notes, Chapter I).

**ut arbitrantur** : Notice that *ut* is often used with the indicative in the sense of "as."

## CHAPTER V

**quod constituerant** : This means the emigration. At first the older men had opposed the project, but they had at last been overruled by the less cautious and less experienced younger element. Thus, prudence and wisdom of age gave way to the indiscretion and enthusiasm of youth, and again to the unfortunate people was to come a repetition of the reverses of Aix, forty years before.

**oppidum vs. vicus** : The distinction of meaning of these words is not more a question of size than of fortifications. About the former was always a wall. The latter was a group of houses in the open country. The existence of towns, villages, buildings, and farms, herein mentioned, shows the Gauls to have advanced far beyond the primal state of human life.

**reliqua aedificia** : This means all buildings not already burned ; that is, all structures on the outlying farms, beyond town or village limits.

**trium mensium** : This would seem to show how long a time it might take them to reach their new home. Let the pupil pause to contemplate what a vast amount of food would be required for 368,000 people for three months ! It has been variously estimated that it took six to twelve thousand wagons and about twenty-five thousand draught animals, extending along a line of thirty to fifty miles, to transport this food.

**Rauraci, Tulingi, Latobrigi** : It will be profitable for the pupil to take a good map of modern Europe and locate the regions occupied by these early people. The Rauraci were near Basle ; the Tulingi, near Schaffhausen ; the Latobrigi, in the Black Forest (Schwarzwald). Notice the repetition of the conjunction *et* ; this is called *polysyndeton*.

**Boli** : These were properly a Gallic tribe, although at this time rather widely scattered and homeless, many being in Germany, just across the Rhine. Schweizer-Sidler is authority for the statement that the Gauls in Germany were a remnant left behind in the great Aryan migration from east to west.

**Noreia** : Modern site of Neumarkt, about one hundred miles southwest of Vienna.

## CHAPTER VI

**itinera** : "There were only two ways by which they could leave home." If the pupil will examine a good modern map, he will see how effectually the ways to the south and west were blocked. Nature has raised an almost unbroken barrier about that little country. Along the south and southwest tower the highest ridges and peaks of the whole Alps, including the famous Rosa, St. Gothard, Great St. Bernard, Finster Aarhorn, Jungfrau, and the highest of all — Mt. Blanc. To the west stood the then impassable Jura range. Whether the comparatively open route down the Rhine, along the base of the Vosges, was considered or not we are not informed. One may infer that it was rejected, because of its long and tedious circuit through a country particularly hostile.



Thus, nature conspired with man and matter to force a conflict between Gaul and Roman. So down the lake to Geneva they were to go. At that point a choice of way opened: they might cross the bridge at Geneva into the country of the Allobroges, who, although under Roman dominion, were not loyal to the master. Their way would then be through country easy to traverse; or, they might continue down the river along its northern bank and emerge into an open country, through the narrow defile where the river bends around the southern limb of the Jura. This way was at last forced upon them. This defile or pass is now called the Pas de l'Ecluse, and is situated on the line of railway from Paris to Geneva, via Mâcon, about an hour's ride out of Geneva. An idea of the wildness of this region may be gained from the fact that a tunnel of two and one-half miles has been constructed to avoid one of the most difficult parts.

**per provinciam nostram**: This really means the land of the Allobroges, south and southeast of Geneva, being now called Dauphiné and Savoie.

The region had been subjugated in B. C. 121. It had revolted and was again pacified by Pomptinus in B. C. 61, and made a part of the Roman Province, the proconsular authority thus being extended quite to Geneva.

**Vado transitur**: Cæsar says there were fords at some places. Now there is only one, and that is only a few miles down from Geneva. The river is very swift, and thus probably its current has worn away the bed. From Lyons to almost the mouth, the current is so strong that only the largest steamers can navigate it.

**Genava**: This is a Celtic word, *gena*, meaning mouth, since at this point the Rhone gorges the waters of the lake into its narrow bed.

**pons**: This is mentioned, since the Helvetii planned to cross it into the land of the Allobroges. Hence, Cæsar's first act was to destroy it (see chapter VII).

**a. d. V. Kal. Apr.**: *ante diem quintum Kalendas Apriles*, "the fifth day before the Kalends of April," nominally March 28. This is a peculiar construction. It is an instance of case by attraction, corresponding to mode by attraction, explained in Rule 94. *Kalendas* is the object of *ante*. *Diem* is said to be drawn away from the usual

ablative of *time when* by its proximity to *ante*. *Apriles* is an adjective, modifying *Kalendas*.

## CHAPTER VII

**Caesari:** Notice that this is the first mention of Cæsar. It is peculiar that he, the writer, speaks of himself, the actor, always in the third person, as though he were writing of another.

Let the pupil now consider how Cæsar had come to be so concerned in Gallic affairs that word was brought directly to him. It was the custom to grant to the consuls, at the close of their term of office, the governorship of some province, for one year, with the title of proconsul. Cæsar had just finished his year as consul (B. C. 59). He was the ablest Roman living, not excepting the great Pompey, who had achieved undying fame in his swift victory over the pirates of the Mediterranean and over Mithridates, the scourge of the East. Now, again, good service would be rendered Rome if she were relieved of fear of Gaul and German, who were hovering "like an ominous cloud charged with forces of uncertain magnitude," the partial strength and fury of which Italy had already more than once seen in action.

Now again was the need of an able man. The Senate, as usual, was lethargic. The people, however, were spurred by personal anxiety and fear to something of the old fire. It was they who had urged the matter of Pompey's mission, mentioned above, and now again they were to make no mistake in their choice of a man to care for their interests on the northern frontier. They played their hand with a vengeance, and instead of the usual one year, they determined to send Cæsar as proconsul or governor of Gaul for five years. The choice of Cæsar may be largely attributed to his popularity. He was the idol of the people, who seem to have come to feel that with him naught was impossible, in him "was the divine majesty of gods, who are the masters of kings." It was a case of prejudiced choice; for, as Froude says, "No Roman general was ever sent upon an enterprise so fraught with complicated possibilities, and few with less experience of the realities of war."

Thus to Cæsar, as the newly appointed governor of Gaul, was

brought word of a condition of affairs requiring his immediate presence.

**Maturat ab urbe:** When *urbs* is alone, that is, without its appositive of the particular city, it means Rome.

**Max. pot. itineribus:** He travelled sometimes a hundred miles a day, either walking at the head of his legions, or mounted on his own favorite horse, which would suffer no one but his master to mount him, or borne in his litter while dictating to four or sometimes seven amanuenses — reading, writing, dictating, and listening all at once. "Under the rains of Gaul, swimming its rivers, climbing its mountains on foot, and making his bed among rains and snows in its forests and morasses," of which Michelet, Suetonius, and Plutarch all tell us, he spared himself none of the hardships of the common soldier.

**Provinciae . . . legio una:** Cæsar went by way of Marseilles, where he probably had left a legion on his return to Rome from Spain, one year before. This was the legion which was to become the famous "tenth." Then, after levying other troops, he hurried on, reaching the vicinity of Geneva in eight days (Plutarch).

**L. Cassium:** This is an incident of the attempted invasion of Italy by the Cimbri and Teutones, Germanic tribes, with Gallic allies, in 107 B. C. The army of L. Cassius Longinus was one of five or six to be defeated by the barbarians during those fearful years from 113–105 B. C. Only in 102 B. C., by Marius at Aquæ Sextiæ (Aix), near Marseilles, and in 101 B. C. at Vercellæ, in Italy, were these disasters fully avenged. "The homeless people of the Cimbri and their comrades were no more" (Mommsen).

**ab Helvetiis pulsaum:** After the Cimbri had defeated the Roman consul, Papirius Carbo, in Noricum, B. C. 113, they turned westward and instigated the Helvetii to similar action.

**sub iugum:** "under the yoke." This ceremony was the usual token of surrender. Livy, the greatest contemporary Roman historian, the personal friend of the Cæsars, the Gibbon-Macaulay of his day, describes the construction of the yoke as follows: "Tribus hastis iugum fit; humi fixis duabus, superque eas transversa una deligata." Under this the defeated army marched. Note our word *subjugate*.

## CHAPTER VIII

**interea**: "in the meantime," i.e., from the time the Helvetian agents left him, April 1, until the designated time of their return, April 13.

**murum fossamque perducit**: Thus entrance into the Province was prevented, but the way to the west still lay open through the Pas de l'Ecluse. Cæsar's force was small. He must replenish it. Leaving Labienus to guard the newly constructed line of defenses along the south bank of the Rhone, he set out for Italy. But before he could return with his five new legions, the enemy had accomplished their exodus through the Sequani, and were plundering and ravaging the land of the Ædui, as given in chapters 9, 10 and 11 following.

As to the wall and moat which were constructed from Geneva to the pass of the Jura, a distance of about eighteen miles by the river, but only half that in a straight line, the labor of construction does not seem wonderful when we are told that recent surveys show that the total extent of space requiring fortification was only about three miles. The work was probably done in as many days. The reason for this short distance is that the south bank of the river is very rugged, being quite precipitous in most places. Thus only at exposed places, where the bank was sloping, were defenses necessary to prevent the enemy from fording and scaling the opposite shore. A clear idea of the appearance of these walls and ditches will be gained by a study of the cut on page 44.

**praesidia, castella**: The former were forces, occupying the latter. The *castella* were little forts, built at the more open and accessible points along the river. The engineers who surveyed the ground by direction of Napoleon III, already mentioned in these Notes, found traces of these structures. About four redoubts, or *castella*, were located. It would be ill advised to associate these fortresses with the fords, since the Helvetii were in possession of boats and rafts, which made them independent of shallows. Knowing this, the Romans certainly took no notice of fords in locating their *castella*. Hence the statement that in those days there were more fords than at present does not follow from this fact of the *castella*.

## CHAPTER IX

**Sequanis invitis :** However willing the Sequani might be to see the Helvetii in their neighbors' territories, they objected to the presence, in their own, of such a flight of devouring locusts. Evidently, however, there was *some general scheme*, of which the entry of the Helvetii into Gaul was an essential part; thus, the Sequani were induced to agree (Froude).

To see what this general scheme was will help the pupil to comprehend the political situation in Gaul at this time. The Ædui seem to have inherited the Celtic leadership of old, and the Romans, in their desire to extend their power over Gaul, had taken them under their protection. But this subtle influence was resisted, not only by tribes quite as strong as the Ædui, but even by parties within tribes nominally favorable to Rome, even within the Ædui themselves. The national spirit was not dead in Gaul. Everywhere the patriots, proud of their independence, rankling against the fetters Rome was slowly forging for them, were at work marshalling their strength within and without their country, soliciting assistance from whatever source, even from the Germans. As Cæsar tells us in Book VI, chapters 11 and 12, in every district, in every hamlet, were these two factions, one in sympathy with Rome, the other bitterly averse to all foreign interference, each seeking external assistance, looking for friends beyond the confines of their own country. The prowess of the Helvetii, and especially their experience in warfare with both Roman and German, made them especially welcome to the national or patriotic party. Their presence would be a most desirable acquisition in a struggle for maintenance of Gallic independence. Thus, since the party of the patriots was now everywhere ascendant, the entry of this hardy people was easily effected, being *an important part of the general scheme* to resist the encroachment of the Romans.

**Dumnorigem Æduum :** In Book VI, chapter 12, Cæsar says the leaders of the two factions were the Ædui, for Rome; the Sequani, for the people. This is but a broad statement of the situation; for, as he himself says again, as stated above, in every district, in every hamlet, and even in families, there was the same factional strife. Dumnorix was the ardent leader of the national faction

among the Ædui. Thus he favored the coming of the Helvetii. With the success of the patriots, he hoped for the *regnum* (see *Notes* to chapter 3), not of the Sequani alone, but perhaps of Gaul.

**obsides dant:** This fact shows the utter decomposition and alienation of the Gallic people as well as their extreme barbarism, since this guaranty of a peaceful passage was deemed necessary. This proved to be a wise foresight of the Sequani, when the passing throng reached the land beyond. (See chapter 11.)

## CHAPTER X

Quiet at last followed the repeated but vain attempts of the Helvetii to scale the south bank of the Rhone, and enter the possessions of the Allobroges, as described in chapter 8. To know the cause of the lull and what was transpiring in the Helvetian quarters, Cæsar sent scouts, who brought back word (*Caesari renuntiatur*) of the intended movements of the enemy.

In this chapter Cæsar states fully why he was so opposed to the emigration of the Helvetii. Some writers are inclined to discredit him, and feel that his reasons were but pretexts for interference, disguising his real purpose of extending Roman sovereignty over Gaul.

Judging Rome by her previous history and even by events then going on in other parts of her frontier, this may be true. Yet the force of Cæsar's argument, that it would be dangerous to have such a hostile and warlike people as the Helvetii as neighbors to the Romanized tribes of the western part of the province, separated not by impassable mountains, but by reaches of open and level plains, must be credited. Furthermore, there was no surety that the emigrants would abide in their new home. Cæsar's keen mind foresaw that the whole movement was but the prelude of the play, and sooner or later the whole region would rise and move as one great tide over the borders of the empire. The beginning must be stopped once for all. Some commentators have argued the emptiness of Cæsar's excuse of opposition to the Helvetii, and have said that, instead of being nearer to the Roman dominions, the emigrants in question would be still further away. In respect to miles, as the crow flies, this claim is true, virtually it is absurd. As Cicero once

said, the gods placed the Alps to shelter Rome in her weakness. Helvetia lay beyond that barrier, while on the far west, from the northern bank of the mouth of the Garonne, whither the emigrants were making, to the borders of the Province, was a stretch of only a hundred miles of open country. To cross this would be, for any warring party of horse, but the casting of a pebble.

Another conclusive reason for resisting the emigration itself is found to have been in Cæsar's mind, by the fact that after the defeat of the enemy at Bibracte, near Autun (chapter 26), he ordered the remnant of the people to return to Helvetia; for he knew, if it were left vacant, hordes of Germans would fill it, and from there out again they would follow in the wake of the Helvetii, and thus Rome would soon have to do with a still fiercer and still more dreaded foe.

**in Italiam:** Nominally, Italy extended north only to the Rubicon river. Cæsar went only to Aquileia, near the head of the Adriatic, now Aquila, an inconsiderable city, long since outgrown by Venice. At that time Aquileia was the chief recruiting station for the north-west, and very strongly fortified.

**magnis itineribus:** From 20 to 25 miles per day.

**proximum iter:** He returned from Aquileia by way of Turin, where he levied the *duas legiones* mentioned, and thence on to the pass of Mont Genève, just south of the famous Mt. Cenis tunnel of to-day, and near the modern Briançon. Here he was attacked by mountaineers, whom he speedily repulsed.

**quinque legiones:** There was already one legion on the Rhone with Labienus. This made six legions, or about 25,000 men, now under Cæsar's command, besides some native recruits of Gallic cavalry.

**Ocelum:** The modern site of this town is not known. Certainly, it was very near, if not quite, where Briançon now stands. Some suggest, rather, the city of Grenoble, pop. 65,000, situated at the confluence of the Isère and the Drac, in the magnificent plain of Graisivaudan, surrounded by imposing mountains.

**Segusiavi:** These were clients of the Ædui, hence mainly favorable to Rome. They were situated around modern Lyons. Cæsar crossed the Rhone above Lyons, keeping a northwesterly route toward the Saône, thus aiming to reach the rear of the advancing host.

In tracing his route at this point, there is a little uncertainty. If he crossed the Rhone below Lyons, into the main country of the Segusiavi, as is to be inferred from his last statements in this chapter, then it were necessary that he recross the Rhone or pass over the Saône above Lyons, in order to get into the rear of the enemy, who were crossing the latter river on their way westward, as described in chapter 12. But Cæsar makes no mention of such a detour. Thus it is generally interpreted that the Segusiavi reached across the river at Vienne, and occupied more or less of the region on the east side northward from that point. Thus, as stated, it is generally understood that he kept on in a northwesterly route, across this arm of the Segusiavan country, crossing the Rhone above Lyons, where it turns to the east.

## CHAPTER XI

**iam :** "By this time." Napoleon III estimated that Cæsar was absent on his recruiting expedition around Aquileia about 40 days. During this time, the Helvetii had marched but about 100 miles, that is, from Geneva, via the pass of the Jura, to Mâcon on the Saône. But it is also estimated that the line of march was 50 miles long. Hence at the time of Cæsar's return, the van of the enemy was well into the Æduan country beyond the river, at least to Chalons. In the next chapter, he says three-fourths were already beyond the river.

**The Ædui :** Why these people were especially despoiled, and with what confidence they could send appeals to Cæsar, as here related, the pupil will readily understand from what has already been given in these notes.

**The Ambarri and Allobroges :** Cæsar speaks of them in terms showing that they had been utterly ravaged, since through this region the whole multitude had passed. The Ædui were yet to feel the full and complete effect of the onslaught. They were crying out more in fear of the coming storm.

## CHAPTER XII

**de tertia vigilia :** From midnight to 3 A.M. (see Vocabulary).

**Tigurini :** These were one of the Gallic tribes or districts, whom



the Cimbri persuaded to join in the invasion of Italy. They assisted in the defeat of the consular army of Junius Silanus in 109 B.C. and of that of Cassius in 107 B.C. Hence Cæsar's exultation that fate had reserved for him the vengeance.

This thought turns us to the question of Cæsar's religious creed. Froude says in his admirable chapter on Cæsar, the man: "He found no reason for supposing that there was a life beyond the grave. He respected the religion of the Roman State as an institution established by the laws. His own writings contain nothing to indicate (prove?) that he himself had any religious belief at all." Another writer has said: "A disbeliever in the superstitions of his day, he yet seems to acknowledge the presence of a controlling power."

### CHAPTER XIII

**pontem in Arare:** This was, of course, a bridge of boats, called a "pontoon," probably constructed of the vessels which were bringing food up the river, as stated in chapter 16.

**diebus viginti:** This shows us how long the Helvetii were crossing the river.

**Divico:** As Cæsar says, he had been a leader of the Helvetii in the Cimbri invasion, when Cassius was defeated, 107 B.C. The year was now 58 B.C., making the event 49 years before. Thus was Divico an old man, and probably the oldest among them in military experience. This was probably the reason why he was chosen envoy on this occasion.

In the choice of this man, who must have awakened in any patriotic Roman the most bitter and revengeful thoughts, some writers have questioned both the wisdom and the motive of the Helvetians. If they hoped or cared for amnesty, it was certainly unwise if not indelicate to offer overtures through a man so identified with the offences of the past. Rather is the question of motive probable. We can understand how Cæsar's sudden appearance with an army of six legions, or 25,000 disciplined men, whereas when last seen he had only one, momentarily startled the enemy into this conference, but still, mingling with and overtopping their anxiety, were a certain disregard and contempt of a foe so inferior in numbers. It were

well, they thought, to remind the Roman leader in their rear, that the Helvetii had done something in the past and were not to be despised in the present.

The truth of the above analysis seems to be confirmed by two or three facts: In the conference, they themselves dictated terms of settlement, and when these were displaced by Cæsar's own, they broke off the negotiations and continued on their way, as though nothing had happened. Again, when Cæsar temporarily changed his tactics, as mentioned in chapter 23, the enemy readily construed it as due to fear.

Hence we see that Divico may have been purposely selected to offend and taunt the Romans, possibly even to frighten them from further pursuit. Unfortunately for them, Cæsar was their Nemesis.

#### CHAPTER XIV

**Cæsar's reply:** Let the pupils take advantage of this opportunity to study Cæsar as an orator. It is advised that the student write this speech to Divico in the most eloquent and forcible English that he can command.

Cæsar was not merely a great general. As Chateaubriand once declared, he is the most complete man of all history; his genius was transcendent in three respects — in statecraft, in war, and in literature and eloquence.

Plutarch says that he had happy talents from nature for a public speaker, and as he did not lack ambition to cultivate them, he was undoubtedly the second orator in Rome. But he never rose to that pitch of eloquence to which his powers might have carried him, being rather engaged in those wars and political intrigues which at last gained him the empire.

The eloquence he showed at Rome, in his earlier career, in the prosecution of certain cases of impeachment, won him a considerable interest, and his engaging address and conversation gained the hearts of his people.

Cæsar supplemented his native oratorical talent by a course of training at Rhodes, under the most skillful teacher of rhetoric and oratory of his time, Apollonius Molon.

Cicero, who often heard him, said that there was a pregnancy in his sentences and a dignity in his manner which no orator in Rome could approach. He surpassed those who had practiced no other art.

Quintilian says that he spoke with the same spirit with which he fought, and by application would have equalled Cicero.

**Cæsar as a writer:** While this thought of Cæsar as an orator is in our minds, it may be well to add a few words to complete the general topic of Cæsar as a man of letters. Only a small part of his writings is extant, their loss being perhaps assignable to the bigotry of the time succeeding Augustus, when the law of majestas was revived and extended to include defamatory writing, and there may have been much in Cæsar's works offensive to a narrow imperialism like that of Tiberius. Among these lost works may be mentioned the *Anti-Cato*, written in reply to the eulogy which Cicero published on the death of that zealous and conservative censor. There is much to be admired in Cato's honor and integrity and stern insistence upon the preservation of the old time virtue. He is the Cato of whom *Portia* boasts of being fathered. He sided with Pompey in the Civil War, and hence was an enemy to Cæsar. It is to be greatly regretted that Cæsar's reply is lost.

Besides this, he wrote treatises on philosophy, language, natural science, and augury. Nor did he disdain verse. He wrote a Latin grammar to amuse himself as he led an army over the Alps. He even wrote a book on the motion of the stars.

His surviving works are seven Books of the Gallic War, and three on the Civil War, and a few fragments on other subjects.

His style is a recognized model of unadorned narration, pure, graceful, easy. Even in his story of the Civil War, of which he was by far the largest part, there is not the slightest trace of strutting or boasting, no straining for effect, no malice, bitterness, or invective, naught but the simple yet eloquent story, told with his usual strong but subdued emotion.

Of this trait Cicero speaks in his masterly way: "... Nudi omni ornatu orationis, tanquam veste detracta — "bare of all adornment, like an undraped human form."

We are reminded of Scott's headlong speed, when Hirtius tells us,

in speaking of the Gallic Commentaries, "While others know how faultlessly they are written, I know with what ease and rapidity he dashed them off."

## CHAPTER XV

**castra movent** : "They break camp."

**The Roman Camp** : This was the solace of the Roman soldier, an ever present help in time of trouble. To-day, in the reverses of battle, an army is exposed to all the dangers of a disorderly retreat, only to be more widely and hopelessly scattered, as it withdraws ; in the days of Rome, however, the army frequently retired before its advancing foe into the shelter of its camp, — *solis occasu suas copias in castra reduxit*, — being one of the stereotype phrases, soon familiar to every reader.

To enable the student to understand the many references in Cæsar to the Roman camp, the following brief account is given :—

A Roman army never halted for the night without entrenching itself. As the day's march approached its close, being usually about noon, the army having marched from about four or five A.M., a detachment of centurions, scouts, and surveyors was sent ahead to select a spot for encampment, and stake out the camp. In Book II, chapter 17, we read : *exploratores centurionesque praemittit, qui locum idoneum castris deligant*.

Thus, the outlines of the camp having been already marked out with great accuracy, no time was lost after the arrival of the army ; laying aside all instruments of war, the soldiers began to dig a ditch or moat (*fossa*), about nine feet wide and six feet deep. With this earth they built also a wall (*vallum*), usually about six feet above the level of the ground, and six or eight feet broad on the top, to enable standing-room for the soldiers in event of an assault on the camp. To strengthen the defenses, branches of trees, stakes, and even logs were imbedded and the sides covered with sods, and along the outer edge of the top was a line of green stakes driven into the ground, and the branches intertwined, rising four or five feet above the top, and forming a breastwork. For a cross-section view of this complete structure, see cut on page 44.

A favorite site for a camp was the slope of a hill (*sub colle, sub*

*monte*), with wood, water, and grass in abundance near by. In Book II, chapter 18, Cæsar describes the natural features of the location of a certain camp.

In form, the camp was either square or rectangular, as nearly as the situation would allow. Let the pupil draw the plan from the following description. See also the camp-plan in any book of antiquities.

On each side was a gateway. From the *porta praetoria*, facing the enemy, to the rear gate, *porta decumana*, ran a road or "street," fifty feet wide. Likewise, the gates on the right and left were joined by a still wider road, called the *via principalis*, thus dividing the camp into two unequal parts. The larger part was assigned to the legionaries, and was itself cut by the *via quintana*. The smaller part was chiefly the headquarters of the general and his staff (*legati*, *quaestores*, and *tribuni*). Between the rampart or wall (*vallum*) and the tents was a space, 200 feet wide, reaching around the camp. This was to prevent the enemy from firing the tents, and also to give room for deploying the troops.

Great precautions were taken day or night to guard against surprise. One or two cohorts were *in statione* before each gate, and a squadron (*turma*) of horse patrolled the camp. Another cohort guarded the quarters of the general and quaestor. At night, the guard was divided into four reliefs to correspond with the divisions of the night (*vigiliae*). The three reliefs not on duty slept on their arms, ready for action.

**The Cavalry:** Cæsar here mentions for the first time the cavalry. It is said he had no horsemen when he came into Gaul, but he commenced at once and raised a force of about 4000, as stated, from the Province and especially from the Ædui and their client tribes. Others say that there was always a regular contingent of cavalry in every legion, mercenary troops from Spain and Germany, as well as from Gaul. These contingent forces of cavalry, however, are rarely mentioned, Cæsar's pride being in his own Roman legionaries. Whatever the fact may be concerning the existence at Cæsar's time of a regular cavalry, it is certain that temporary levies were made from Gallic states subject or favorable to Rome. These probably disbanded on the approach of winter, appearing again in the spring.

Thus, the cavalry is to be regarded as of two kinds: one forming

a regular part of the legion, hence often called *legionarii equites*, the other being a distinct body, and usually retaining its native dress and equipment and manner of fighting. Both were completely foreign.

The cavalry was divided into regiments (*alae*) of about 300 men each; these again divided into ten squadrons (*turmae*) of thirty men; and these again into three decuries (*decuriae*) of ten men each, in charge of decurions (chapter 23). The chief officer of an *ala* was called *praefectus equitum*, being usually a Roman, sometimes a native, as in chapter 18, where Dumnorix is mentioned as being in command of the Æduan cavalry.

Cæsar placed little dependence upon his cavalry, using them rather for scouting purposes, and to harass an enemy's line of march. In actual conflict they proved unstable, as shown in chapters 15 and 24. Their presence, too, gave a show of numbers.

**de nostris**: This is pointed out as being the beginning of those changes, chiefly declensional, which have produced the modern Romance tongues of Italy, France, and Spain.

**suos a proelio continebat**: They were now moving down along the west bank of the Saône, toward Chalons. The region here is very broken, and so did not give Cæsar the wished for opportunity to fight. This may account for his delay to attack.

## CHAPTER XVI

**propter frigora**: "On account of the frosts."

It was now at least the middle of June, and the region was south of the central part of France. This leads us to believe that the climate of sunny France has changed since Cæsar's day. This change may have come from cutting down the extensive forests, and draining the marshes, which Cæsar often mentions.

**frumenta**: In the plural, this means "standing grain."

**pabuli**: green fodder. Why was there not much for Cæsar?

**ab Arare**: The Helvetii had left the river, making westerly into the valley of the Loire.

**frumentum militibus metiri**: The regular food was coarse flour, or unground wheat or barley, which the soldier himself must grind. Every fifteen days he received two *modii*, or pecks. Each day he

ground about two pounds and boiled it into a thick paste, or made a kind of unleavened bread. Any other food or delicacy had to be obtained by foraging, or bought of the merchants (*mercatores*), who always followed the army in large numbers.

**vergobretus** : The real title in the Celtic language was *guerg breth*, "executor of judgment." Cæsar latinizes the word into *vergobretus*.

(**Aeduorum**) **precibus abductus** : In chapter 11, Cæsar told us that the Ædui sent envoys to ask aid of him against the Helvetii.

## CHAPTER XVII

**esse nonnullos** : Review the *Notes* of chapter 3.

The *principes* were not necessarily the same men as the *magistratus*.

**praestare . . . erepturi** : These were the favorite arguments of the national party. (See *Notes* to chapter 9.)

"Among the Ædui, too, there were fiery spirits who cherished the old traditions, and saw in the Roman alliance a prelude to annexation."

**tacuisse** : This shows how strong the anti-Roman feeling had become, even among the people hitherto most loyal to Rome.

## CHAPTER XVIII

**Dumnorix** : Read again the text of chapters 3 and 9.

What was the conspiracy of Orgetorix ?

**dimittit, retinet** : The omission of the conjunction is called *asyndeton*. What is *polysyndeton* ? (See *Notes* of chapter 5.)

**rerum novarum** : Usual expression for a political revolution. The frequency of such uprisings and changes among semi-barbarian people may be easily understood. The world has not yet outgrown them. Recent South American history is replete with fit examples. Likewise, in the late overthrow of the Obrenovitch dynasty in Servia, consummated by the murder of the king and queen and their adherents, and the immediate establishment of a liberal constitutional government, the student finds a striking similarity to the violent *coup d'état* of old.

*Farming the revenues*

**portoria :** These were duties or customs collected on imports and exports on the frontier, and on goods passing through the country, whether by land or water. Sometimes these tolls were levied by blackmail, i.e. by force, threats, or intimidation. The Ædui were especially well situated for the collection of large revenues, since by bridge tolls they controlled a considerable part of the Saône, which was the main water route into central Gaul from Marseilles.

After the Roman fashion, these revenues were "farmed out," that is, the privilege of collecting them was sold at auction. The buyer then made all collections, and kept for himself as profit all money remaining over the price which he bid and paid to the State. Often the successful bidder would sublet certain districts to various individuals, these underlings being the "publicans" mentioned in the New Testament.

**ex Helvetiis uxorem :** Who was the wife of Dumnorix? (See chapter 3.)

**sororem ex matre :** "A half sister, on his mother's side."

**Divitiacus :** He had long been a personal friend of Cæsar. He had been in Rome several times before Cæsar came to Gaul. It was he who went in person to notify the Roman Senate of the inroads of the Germans in B.C. 63, and again of the proposed exodus of the Helvetii. Hence the deference and affection which Cæsar shows him in chapter 19.

**si quid accidat Romanis :** This softened expression of a harsh thought is called *euphemism*. Translate: "in case of any disaster to the Romans."

**proelium equestre adversum :** The unsuccessful cavalry skirmish, mentioned in chapter 15, is thus explained as due to the treachery of Dumnorix. Review topic *Cavalry* in *Notes* to chapter 15.

## CHAPTER XIX

**iniusso suo et civitatis :** *suo* refers to Cæsar; *civitatis* means the Ædui.

**inscientibus ipsis :** *ipsis* refers to both Cæsar and the Ædui.

**a magistratu Aeduorum :** To whom does this refer? What was



his official title, in both Celtic and Latin? What was his authority? (See *Notes* and text of chapter 15.)

**animadverto**: What is the literal meaning of this word? What is its inferred meaning? What is such studied toning of harsh thought called?

**Studium . . . temperantiam**: Notice the omission of conjunctions. What is this frequent omission in Cæsar called?

**eius**: i.e. of Dumnorix.

**interpretibus**: Why were interpreters necessary in the Roman army in Gaul?

Did Divitiacus understand Latin?

**Procillus**: This man was a cultured Gaul, an intimate friend and important character in Cæsar's chronicle. In Book I, chapter 47, Cæsar speaks highly of his birth, character, and linguistic attainments.

**principem**: One enjoying a *principatum*, i.e., "a leading and influential man." (See *Notes* to chapter 3.)

**ipso** and **eius**: These both refer to Divitiacus. In chapter 16, the student will remember that Divitiacus is mentioned as being summoned to the meeting.

**eo**: To whom does this refer?

**causa cognita**: Let the student be always careful in the translation of the ablative absolute. Never render it literally. Never sacrifice one's own tongue to any foreign idiom. Render this: "after trying the case."

## CHAPTER XX

Find an example of euphemism in this chapter. Let the pupil compare carefully the direct and the indirect discourse of the speech of Divitiacus, and be prepared to convert the one into the other at dictation in class.

**ipse, se, suam, sese**: All these refer to Divitiacus, the speaker.

**ille**: This refers to the one remote, i.e. to the one spoken of, Dumnorix.

**condonare**: What is the literal meaning of this word? The literal meaning accounts for its double object.

**Dumnorix:** What was his fate? (See Vocabulary.) Give in review an account of him, as given by Cæsar.

## CHAPTER XXI

### *Officers of a Roman army*

1. **Dux belli:** Before entering upon the duties of his new office, the commander in chief took the vows in the Capitol, and assumed the *paludamentum*, or cloak of scarlet wool, gold-embroidered, as token of his *imperium militare*. His title was *dux belli*, but after his first victory he received, from his soldiers, the courteous appellation of *imperator*.

Usually he was narrowly restricted by the Senate, subject to its whims, but Cæsar in Gaul was autocratic. He could increase his forces at will, and make war or peace without consulting the Senate.

2. **Legati:** These were lieutenant-generals of the *dux belli*, appointed by the Senate, and usually three in number. Cæsar had ten in Gaul. They were entirely subject to their commander, having been chosen on his nomination. Cæsar usually placed them in command of a legion each, and in his absence he conferred upon them the *imperium*, the lieutenant then being called *legatus pro prætore*.

3. **Quæstor:** The *quæstor*, or quartermaster, was elected by the people annually to accompany the army and attend to the financial affairs. He took charge of the military treasure-chest, and supervised the supplies and equipment of the soldiers. He also rated and disposed of the booty.

Each *dux belli* had a *quæstor*.

4. **Tribuni militum:** Until displaced by the *legati*, these, six to each legion, held rank next to the commander. In earlier times they led the legion in turn, but in Cæsar's army we find them outranked by the *legati*, and reduced to subordinate services. This was a most beneficial reform, for these *tribuni* were of the equestrian rank, or order of knights, and had been appointed through family influence, and not because of military skill. This change awakened no animosity on the part of these deposed favorites of fortune, for Cæsar used his customary tact, and to them were given functions more genteel; for, instead of leading rough men to the fray, they hereafter were to sit in councils of war and preside at courts-martial.

**5. Centuriones:** These were the real leaders of the soldiers. Their position was like that of captain, sergeant, and corporal combined. They were of humble birth, and promoted solely because of fighting qualities. They were the pride and envy of the common soldier; their office, the goal of his ambition.

6. Below the centurions and above the common soldier, or "private," were privileged classes; as veterans, reenlisted men, orderlies, standard bearers, musicians, etc.

**exploratoribus:** Soldiers, sent out for scouting purposes, were called *speculatores*, if alone; if in parties, *exploratores*.

**sub monte:** This was Mt. Tauffrin, in the Cote d'or ridge.

**vigilia:** About what hour was it? (See Vocabulary.)

**pro-praetore:** The governor of a province was usually called *praetor* or *pro-praetor*. He was supreme in military and civil authority. In case of a critical state of war in any province, a consul was sent as governor of the province, with the title *pro-consul*. Such in name was Cæsar in Gaul. But he was practically *praetor* of Gaul, i.e. governor of Gaul. In as much as the praetor was supreme in military affairs, the word *praetor* means "commanding general," as well as governor. Cæsar uses the word in this sense in the text. Labienus was sent on this mission, like an envoy plenipotentiary, with full authority of a commanding general.

**quid sui consilii sit:** His plan may be inferred from the errand of the scouts. What was this errand? Cæsar planned a flank movement, that is, to pass around to the rear, and occupy the heights above the enemy, who lay encamped at the base.

**equitatum:** What does Cæsar do with his cavalry in this instance? Understand that this was their usual position in the line of march. Describe the source, use, and organization of the cavalry. (See Notes to chapter 15.)

**de quarta vigilia:** The fourth watch had begun when Cæsar commenced his march. As the night watch began at sunset and continued until sunrise, and as the night was divided into four watches, the student must know the season of year to determine the exact hours of any given watch. Estimating the number of night hours, and dividing by four, we obtain the length of a watch, from which the time of any watch is easily determined. For exam-

ple: It was about the first of July, the sun setting at 7.29 and rising at 4.38. If Cæsar started about the beginning of the fourth watch, what was the approximate hour of the night? (Answer: About 2 A. M.) Using the almanac, let the teacher give like examples.

The fact that it lacked yet about two and one-half hours of dawn explains how Cæsar could hope to gain his vantage-ground unseen. It also helps to excuse the blunder of Considius mentioned in the next chapter.

**Considius:** What had been his military experience? Answer: He had been in active service under two of the most successful generals, in several of the greatest wars waged by Rome, the Mithridatic and the Servile.

## CHAPTER XXII

**prima luce:** At what hour?

**mons:** What mountain?

**ipse:** Cæsar. How far had he marched since two o'clock?

**captivis:** What officer had charge of booty?

**A Gallicis armis:** "from," an unusual meaning, since it contains the idea of *means*, which does not admit the preposition.

What was Cæsar's probable inference, from the report of his scouts, as to Labienus?

**Labienus:** Was he really, or only nominally, *praetor*, as he stood there on the summit at dawn, watching in vain for Cæsar? Why?

**intervallo:** At what distance did Cæsar follow the enemy? (See chapter 15.)

## CHAPTER XXIII

**frumentum:** Describe the food of the Roman soldier as to kind, quantity, mode of preparation, and apportionment. What officer disbursed supplies? How might the soldier obtain delicacies? (See *Notes* to chapter 16.)

**Bibracte:** Now identified with Mont Beuvray, a considerable elevation of about 3,000 feet, in the highlands of Nivernais, about ten miles west of Autun. Scholars formerly placed Bibracte on the site of Autun, but this opinion was changed as a result of the investigations of Napoleon III of France in 1865, as already mentioned in

these *Notes*. He showed that the Gauls usually chose for their towns places difficult of access, either on rugged elevations, or in the midst of extensive marshes, which were so abundant in France in those days. In Book III, Cæsar gives an elaborate account of the sites of the towns of the Veneti, on the west coast, and how difficult it was for him to reach them. Napoleon traced several ancient roads leading to the summit of Mont Beuvray, and on excavation found there the remains of foundations of Gallic walls and towers.

**decurionis** : What was his command in the army? (See *Notes* to chapter 15.)

**superioribus locis** : What is the allusion?

## CHAPTER XXIV

### *The battle*

**The place** : Colonel Stoffel, in his *Histoire de Jules César*, says the field of battle was near the village of Montmort, southeast of Mont Beuvray, and three miles northwest of Toulon.

**in prox. collem** : Cæsar could have hoped for no more fortunate turn of affairs. He was now put on the defensive, and could choose his own position. What do you notice concerning the usual situation of the battle lines? In this battle, where did he station his veteran legions? His newly enrolled legions? His foreign allies? His baggage? His camp?

Describe the form and defenses of a Roman camp. Name one particular purpose of a Roman camp, which in modern warfare it does not serve. (See *Notes* to chapter 15.)

### *The legion*

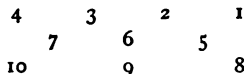
**legiones** : All legionary soldiers were *milites gravis armaturae*, "soldiers with heavy armor."

The number of men in a legion is variously estimated from 3,000 to 5,000. This contrariety is probably due to the fact that the dead and disabled were not replaced; so the older the legion in service, the smaller it became. Instead of recruits in a veteran legion, new legions were enrolled. In Cæsar's legions in Gaul, it is generally

agreed with Rüstow that each contained 3,600 men. Each legion contained ten cohorts of 360 men each, each cohort three maniples of 120 each, each maniple two centuries of sixty each. In legions thus reduced in number below the normal, the century was often called *ordo*.

### *The triple formation*

On the field of battle, the cohorts were drawn up in *triplex acies*. The men of each cohort stood ten deep, and each cohort in a line stood 120 feet apart. The veteran cohorts stood in front, and the best troops were in the first cohort. The following diagram will show the arrangement of a legion in *triplex acies*, so often mentioned by Cæsar:



**Auxilia :** The auxiliaries were *militēs levis armaturæ*, "soldiers in light armor." These were slingers, who hurled stones or lead bullets, the archers or bowmen, and the cavalry.

**sarcinæ :** The personal baggage of the legionary. On the march he carried his own food supply, cooking utensils, blanket, and one or two rampart stakes. This luggage was done up in a bundle and suspended from a forked pole, which he carried over his shoulder. The pole was forked, like a crutch, and served much the same purpose to a weary soldier, standing at rest. Marius devised this, and hence the phrase, the "mules of Marius." The entire weight of this individual luggage, or *sarcinæ*, was often fully sixty pounds.

**phalange :** This was a common Gallic form of charge or defense. The infantry was arranged in close masses, like the old Greek phalanx, with their heavy shields overlapping, forming a complete obstruction to the opposing javelins. The test of this arrangement was in the first furious onslaught, which often swept everything before it. If the first charge failed, the rest of the fight was at a woful disadvantage to the crowded Gauls. Sometimes, as Cæsar relates in the next chapter, the heavy javelins of the Romans penetrated the overlapping shields, thus binding them firmly together and imprisoning the wiggling, stifling mass beneath.

## CHAPTER XXV

**suo equo** : Plutarch says: "When he had drawn his forces up, as described, his horse was brought to him. Upon which he said, 'When I have won the battle, I shall want my horse for the pursuit; at present let us march, as we are, against the enemy.'"

Again, at the battle of Munda, Cæsar ordered his horse taken to the rear. May one reason for this have been his solicitude for his horse? (See *Notes* to chapter 7.) Was he a skillful rider?

Answer: "He was a good horseman, and brought that exercise to such perfection by practice that he could sit a horse at full speed, with his hands behind him." — *Plutarch*.

**scutis** : The Gallic shield was rectangular, sometimes oval, four feet long, two and one half feet wide.

**capto monte** : "When the mountain was reached," i.e., by the enemy.

**latere aperto** : "on the exposed flank." As the shield was carried on the left arm, which side would be the "exposed flank"?

**Boii et Tulingi** : Semi-Germanic tribes. Explain how they came to be in the migration (chapter 5). They had been in the van of the line of march thus far; show how they were now in the rear.

**conversa signa** : This refers only to the third battle line. What cohorts? What cohorts were engaged with the main body of the Helvetii? (See diagram in *Notes* to chapter 24.)

**Venientes** : Who were these?

## CHAPTER XXVI

**diu atque acriter** : It cost him a long and severe conflict to drive their army out of the field. The fight lasted from noon till night. The barbarians fought gallantly, and in numbers were enormously superior. Plutarch says there were 190,000 fighting men among them, while Cæsar's army did not exceed 25,000. "But the contest was between sturdy discipline and wild valor; and it concluded as such contests always must."

**ancipiti proelio** : That is, on two fronts. Explain this.

**alteri; alteri** : The Helvetii; the Boii and Tulingi.

**carros**: About how many carts are estimated to have been in the migration?

**hora septima**: "The seventh hour." What o'clock was it? (Answer: The *hora* was the unit of daylight. The time from sunrise to sunset was divided into twelve equal parts, or *horae*. The length of an *hora*, then, varied with the season from about 45 minutes to one hour and a quarter. At this particular season, the sun rose about 5 and set at 7. How many hours of daylight? *Answer 14*. How many minutes in each *hora*? *Answer 70*. Then what o'clock was it when the battle began? *Answer 1 P. M.*) Let the pupil show the solution of this problem. Let the teacher give others like it.

**pro vallo carros**: This was the usual fortification of a Gallic camp. How does this compare with the Roman?

**carros rotasque**: Some MSS. have *rēdāsque*, the *reda* being a four-wheeled wagon. However, the frequency with which *hendiadys* occurs renders the first reading probable. (See Rule of Syntax, 97.)

**Orgetorigis filia**: With whom was she in camp?

**finis Lingonum**: This region lies north of Mont Beuvray; it is now called Champagne. Scholars have sometimes located the end of the flight of the Helvetii at Langres, about ninety miles from Mont Beuvray, but Napoleon makes it at Tonnerre, sixty miles west of Langres.

**The survivors**: "Half of the fighting men of the Swiss were killed; their camp was stormed; the survivors, with the remnant of the women and children (a little more than a third remained of those who had left Switzerland), struggled on to Langres, where they surrendered." — *Froude*.

**sepulcrum occisorum**: The burial of the dead was a most sacred duty. The Romans believed that the spirit of the unburied roamed aimlessly on the banks of the Styx, unable to gain entrance to the land of rest.

The long delay here shows that Cæsar's army had likewise suffered sorely.

## CHAPTER XXVII

**quo tum essent**: Where were the Helvetii at this time?

**Verbigenus**: How many cantons composed the state of Helvetia? Name two.



This district lay between modern Berne and Lucerne.

**multitudine dediticiorum:** What was the number of prisoners of war? (See text of chapter 26.)

## CHAPTER XXVIII

**in hostium numero:** Euphemistic for slaughtering or selling into slavery.

**ipsos:** The Helvetii and their associates.

**oppida vicosque:** Whose towns and villages? How many of each? (See chapter 5.) What is the difference between *oppidum* and *vicus*?

**maxime ratione:** "chiefly for this reason," as explained in the *quod* clause following. Only about 100,000 people returned to their mountain home in Helvetia, where 300,000 had been before, and where 3,000,000 are to-day. Even these 100,000 were in large part broken-hearted women and children, a petty restraint to a horde of Germans. But this little colony, whom Cæsar could now rely upon to remain quiet and contented at home for another fifty years, was better on that treacherous frontier than no colony at all. And yet, history does show us that little by little the Germans did creep into that region, and were ready to issue into Gaul and Italy in concert with the entire Teutonic north, to wrest from Rome her possessions, carry pillage through her very streets, and leave the Western Roman Empire but a shadow of being.

As to the history of the Helvetii after their melancholy return, there is reason to believe they never recovered. Cæsar speaks of them again in the battle of Alesia, about six years later (B.C. 52), when they sent 8,000 troops. It is probable they were assimilated into the German tribes, which settled slowly in Helvetia. To-day, Switzerland is largely Germanic.

**Boios . . . concessit:** The more usual order would be *Aeduis petentibus, ut Boios in finibus suis collocarent, quod Boii egregia virtute cogniti erant, Cæsar id concessit*.

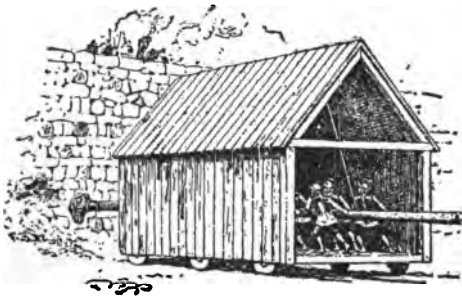
**Virtute (Boiorum):** What had the Boii done of remarkable courage?

**petentibus Aeduis:** Why did the Ædui want these brave allies? See *Notes* to chapter 9, as to the political situation.

## CHAPTER XXIX

**tabulae:** These lists were written on the usual "writing-tablets," which were thin, small boards, hinged at the back, so as to fold and protect the sides, covered with wax. Upon this wax, the impressions were made with an instrument called *stilus*.

**litteris Graecis:** "In Greek characters or letters," i.e. using the Greek alphabet merely, not the language, since their own language had no alphabet. The Gauls learned these letters from the Greek colonists at Marseilles.

*Ariës*



# TABLES

## OF

### DECLENSION AND CONJUGATION.

---

#### NOUNS.

##### First Declension. — A-Stems.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. naut-a, <i>a sailor.</i>	naut-ae, <i>sailors.</i>
G. naut-ae, <i>of a sailor.</i>	naut-ārum, <i>of sailors.</i>
D. naut-ae, <i>to or for a sailor.</i>	naut-īs, <i>to or for sailors.</i>
A. naut-am, <i>a sailor.</i>	naut-ās, <i>sailors.</i>
V. naut-a, <i>O sailor.</i>	naut-ae, <i>O sailors.</i>
A. naut-ā, <i>with, by, from a sailor.</i>	naut-īs, <i>with, by, from sailors.</i>

##### Second Declension. — O-Stems.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. serv-us	serv-ī	oppid-um	oppid-a
G. serv-ī	serv-ōrum	oppid-ī	oppid-ōrum
D. serv-ō	serv-īs	oppid-ō	oppid-īs
A. serv-um	serv-ōs	oppid-um	oppid-a
V. serv-e	serv-ī	oppid-um	oppid-a
A. serv-ō	serv-īs	oppid-ō	oppid-īs

	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
N.	puer	puer-ī	ager	agr-ī	vir	vir-ī
G.	puer-ī	puer-ōrum	agr-ī	agr-ōrum	vir-ī	vir-ōrum
D.	puer-ō	puer-īs	agr-ō	agr-īs	vir-ō	vir-īs
A.	puer-um	puer-ōs	agr-um	agr-ōs	vir-um	vir-ōs
V.	puer	puer-ī	ager	agr-ī	vir	vir-ī
A.	puer-ō	puer-īs	agr-ō	agr-īs	vir-ō	vir-īs

## Third Declension.

## Liquid Stems.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	homō	homin-ēs	frāter	frātr-ēs
G.	homin-is	homin-um	frātr-is	frātr-um
D.	homin-ī	homin-ibus	frātr-ī	frātr-ibus
A.	homin-em	homin-ēs	frātr-em	frātr-ēs
V.	homō	homin-ēs	frāter	frātr-ēs
A.	homin-e	homin-ibus	frātr-e	frātr-ibus
N.	cōnsul	cōnsul-ēs	scrīptor	scrīptōr-ēs
G.	cōnsul-is	cōnsul-um	scrīptōr-is	scrīptōr-um
D.	cōnsul-ī	cōnsul-ibus	scrīptōr-ī	scrīptōr-ibus
A.	cōnsul-em	cōnsul-ēs	scrīptōr-em	scrīptōr-ēs
V.	cōnsul	cōnsul-ēs	scrīptor	scrīptōr-ēs
A.	cōnsul-e	cōnsul-ibus	scrīptōr-e	scrīptōr-ibus
N.	tempus	tempor-a	flūmen	flūmin-a
G.	tempor-is	tempor-um	flūmin-is	flūmin-um
D.	tempor-ī	tempor-ibus	flūmin-ī	flūmin-ibus
A.	tempus	tempor-a	flūmen	flūmin-a
V.	tempus	tempor-a	flūmen	flūmin-a
A.	tempor-e	tempor-ibus	flūmin-e	flūmin-ibus

**Mute Stems.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. virtūs	virtūt-ēs	hiems	hiem-ēs
G. virtūt-is	virtūt-um	hiem-is	hiem-um
D. virtūt-ī	virtūt-ibus	hiem-ī	hiem-ibus
A. virtūt-em	virtūt-ēs	hiem-em	hiem-ēs
V. virtūs	virtūt-ēs	hiems	hiem-ēs
A. virtūt-e	virtūt-ibus	hiem-e	hiem-ibus
N. dux	duc-ēs	rēx	rēg-ēs
G. duc-is	duc-um	rēg-is	rēg-um
D. duc-ī	duc-ibus	rēg-ī	rēg-ibus
A. duc-em	duc-ēs	rēg-em	rēg-ēs
V. dux	duc-ēs	rēx	rēg-ēs
A. duc-e	duc-ibus	rēg-e	rēg-ibus
N. prīncep-s	prīncip-ēs	pēs	ped-ēs
G. prīncip-is	prīncip-um	ped-is	ped-um
D. prīncip-ī	prīncip-ibus	ped-ī	ped-ibus
A. prīncip-em	prīncip-ēs	ped-em	ped-ēs
V. prīncep-s	prīncip-ēs	pēs	ped-ēs
A. prīncip-e	prīncip-ibus	ped-e	ped-ibus

**Stems in i.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. cīv-is	cīv-ēs	host-is	host-ēs
G. cīv-is	cīv-ium	host-is	host-ium
D. cīv-ī	cīv-ibus	host-ī	host-ibus
A. cīv-em	cīv-ēs, -īs	host-em	host-ēs, -īs
V. cīv-is	cīv-ēs	host-is	host-ēs
A. cīv-e	cīv-ibus	host-e	host-ibus

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	nox	noct-ēs	animal	animāl-ia
G.	noct-is	noct-ium	animāl-is	animāl-ium
D.	noct-ī	noct-ibus	animāl-ī	animāl-ibus
A.	noct-em	noct-ēs, -īs	animal	animāl-ia
V.	nox	noct-ēs	animal	animāl-ia
A.	noct-e	noct-ibus	animāl-ī	animāl-ibus

## Fourth Declension. — U-Stems.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	fruct-us	fruct-ūs	corn-ū	corn-ua
G.	fruct-ūs	fruct-uum	corn-ūs	corn-uum
D.	fruct-uī, -ū	fruct-ibus	corn-ū	corn-ibus
A.	fruct-um	fruct-ūs	corn-ū	corn-ua
V.	fruct-us	fruct-ūs	corn-ū	corn-ua
A.	fruct-ū	fruct-ibus	corn-ū	corn-ibus

## Fifth Declension. — E-Stems.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	di-ēs	di-ēs	r-ēs	r-ēs
G.	di-eī	di-ērum	r-eī	r-ērum
D.	di-eī	di-ēbus	r-eī	r-ēbus
A.	di-em	di-ēs	r-em	r-ēs
V.	di-ēs	di-ēs	r-ēs	r-ēs
A.	di-ē	di-ēbus	r-ē	r-ēbus

## Special Paradigms.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	dom-us	dom-ūs	de-us	de-ī, di-ī, dī
G.	dom-ūs	dom-uum, -ōrum	de-ī	de-ōrum, de-ūm
D.	dom-uī, -ō	dom-ibus	de-ō	de-īs, di-īs, d-īs
A.	dom-um	dom-ōs, -ūs	de-um	de-ōs
V.	dom-us	dom-ūs	de-us	de-ī, di-ī, dī
A.	dom-ō, -ū	dom-ibus	de-ō	de-īs, di-īs, d-īs

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.		SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	senex	sen-ēs		iter	itiner-a
G.	sen-is	sen-um		itiner-is	itiner-um
D.	sen-ī	sen-ibus		itiner-ī	itiner-ibus
A.	sen-em	sen-ēs		iter	itiner-a
V.	senex	sen-ēs		iter	itiner-a
A.	sen-e	sen-ibus		itiner-e	itiner-ibus

## ADJECTIVES.

## First and Second Declensions.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	bon-us	bon-a	bon-um	bon-ī	bon-ae	bon-a
G.	bon-ī	bon-ae	bon-ī	bon-ōrum	bon-ārum	bon-ōrum
D.	bon-ō	bon-ae	bon-ō	bon-īs	bon-īs	bon-īs
A.	bon-um	bon-am	bon-um	bon-ōs	bon-ās	bon-a
V.	bon-e	bon-a	bon-um	bon-ī	bon-ae	bon-a
A.	bon-ō	bon-ā	bon-ō	bon-īs	bon-īs	bon-īs

## SINGULAR.

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	miser	miser-a	miser-um
G.	miser-ī	miser-ae	miser-ī
D.	miser-ō	miser-ae	miser-ō
A.	miser-um	miser-am	miser-um
V.	miser	miser-a	miser-um
A.	miser-ō	miser-ā	miser-ō



	<i>M.</i>	<i>PLURAL.</i> <i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	miser-ī	miser-ae	miser-a
G.	miser-ōrum	miser-ārum	miser-ōrum
D.	miser-īs	miser-īs	miser-īs
A.	miser-ōs	miser-ās	miser-a
V.	miser-ī	miser-ae	miser-a
A.	miser-īs	miser-īs	miser-īs

## SINGULAR.

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
/	tōt-us	tōt-a	tōt-um
	tōt-īus	tōt-īus	tōt-īus
	tōt-ī	tōt-ī	tōt-ī
	tōt-um	tōt-am	tōt-um
	tōt-ō	tōt-ā	tōt-ō/

## POSSESSIVE, SINGULAR OWNERSHIP.

<i>SINGULAR.</i>	<i>PLURAL.</i>
meus, -a, -um, <i>my</i> .	meī, -ae, -a
tuus, -a, -um, <i>thy, your</i> .	tuī, -ae, -a
suus, -a, -um, <i>his, her, its</i> .	suī, -ae, -a

## POSSESSIVE, PLURAL OWNERSHIP.

noster, -tra, -trum, <i>our</i> .	nostrī, -ae, -a
vester, -tra, -trum, <i>your</i> .	vestrī, -ae, -a
suus, -a, -um, <i>their</i> .	suī, -ae, -a

## Third Declension.

	<i>SINGULAR.</i> <i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>PLURAL.</i> <i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	sapiēns	sapiēns	sapient-ēs	sapient-ia
G.	sapient-is	sapient-is	sapient-ium	sapient-ium
D.	sapient-ī	sapient-ī	sapient-ibus	sapient-ibus
A.	sapient-em	sapiēns	sapient-ēs	sapient-ia
V.	sapiēns	sapiēns	sapient-ēs	sapient-ia
A.	sapient-ī	sapient-ī	sapient-ibus	sapient-ibus

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. fort-is	fort-e	fort-ēs	fort-ia
G. fort-is	fort-is	fort-ium	fort-ium
D. fort-ī	fort-ī	fort-ibus	fort-ibus
A. fort-em	fort-e	fort-ēs	fort-ia
V. fort-is	fort-e	fort-ēs	fort-ia
A. fort-ī	fort-ī	fort-ibus	fort-ibus

<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. ācer	ācr-is	ācr-e	ācr-ēs	ācr-ēs	ācr-ia
G. ācr-is	ācr-is	ācr-is	ācr-ium	ācr-ium	ācr-ium
D. ācr-ī	ācr-ī	ācr-ī	ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus
A. ācr-em	ācr-em	ācr-e	ācr-ēs	ācr-ēs	ācr-ia
V. ācer	ācr-is	ācr-e	ācr-ēs	ācr-ēs	ācr-ia
A. ācr-ī	ācr-ī	ācr-ī	ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus

## Irregular Comparison.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i> .	melior, -ius	optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i> .	pēior, -ius	pessimus, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um, <i>great</i> .	māior, -ius	māximus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um, <i>small</i> .	minor, -us	minimus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i> .	—, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
vetus (gen. -eris), <i>old</i> .	vetustior, -ius	veterrimus, -a, -um
senex (gen. senis), <i>aged</i> .	{ senior māior nātū }	māximus nātū
iuvenis, -e, <i>young</i> .	{ iunior minor nātū }	minimus nātū

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
facilis, -e, <i>easy</i> .	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis, -e, <i>difficult</i> .	difficilior, -ius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis, -e, <i>like</i> .	similior, -ius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis, -e, <i>unlike</i> .	dissimilior, -ius	dissimillimus, -a, -um
humilis, -e, <i>low</i> .	humilior, -ius	humillimus, -a, -um
gracilis, -e, <i>slender</i> .	gracilior, -ius	gracillimus, -a, -um
exterus, <i>outward</i> .	exterior, <i>outer</i> .	{ extrēmus extimus } <i>outmost</i> .
inferus, <i>below</i> .	inferior, <i>lower</i> .	{ infimus īmus } <i>lowest</i> .
posterus, <i>following</i> .	posterior, <i>latter</i> .	{ postrēmus postumus } <i>last</i> .
superus, <i>above</i> .	superior, <i>higher</i> .	{ suprēmus summus } <i>highest</i> .
PREPOSITION.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
cis, citrā, <i>on this side</i> .	citerior, <i>hither</i> .	citimus, <i>hithermost</i> .
in, intrā, <i>within</i> .	interior, <i>inner</i> .	intimus, <i>inmost</i> .
prae, prō, <i>before</i> .	prior, <i>former</i> .	primus, <i>first</i> .
prope (adv.), <i>near</i> .	propior, <i>nearer</i> .	proximus { <i>nearest</i> . <i>next</i> .
ultrā (adv.), <i>beyond</i> .	ulterior, <i>farther</i> .	ultimus, <i>farthest</i> .

## Declension of Comparatives.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. fortior	fortius	fortiōr-ēs	fortiōr-a
G. fortiōr-is	fortiōr-is	fortiōr-um	fortiōr-um
D. fortiōr-ī	fortiōr-ī	fortiōr-ibus	fortiōr-ibus
A. fortiōr-em	fortius	fortiōr-ēs, -is	fortiōr-a
V. fortior	fortius	fortiōr-ēs	fortiōr-a
A. fortiōr-e, -ī	fortiōr-e, -ī	fortior-ibus	fortior-ibus

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. —	plūs	plūr-ēs	plūr-a
G. —	plūr-is	plūr-ium	plūr-ium
D. —	—	plūr-ibus	plūr-ibus
A. —	plūs	plūr-ēs, -īs	plūr-a
A. —	plūr-e	plūr-ibus	plūr-ibus

## Numerals.

## CARDINALS.

1. ūnus, -a, -um	28. duodētrīgintā
2. duo, duae, duo	29. ūndētrīgintā
3. trēs, tria	30. trīgintā
4. quattuor	40. quadrāgintā
5. quinque	50. quinquāgintā
6. sex	60. sexāgintā
7. septem	70. septuāgintā
8. octō	80. octōgintā
9. novem	90. nōnāgintā
10. decem	100. centum
11. ūndecim	101. centum ūnus
12. duodecim	200. ducentī, -ae, -a
13. tredecim	300. trecentī
14. quattuordecim	400. quadringentī
15. quindecim	500. quīngentī
16. sēdecim	600. sexcentī
17. septendecim	700. septingentī
18. duodēvigintī	800. octingentī
19. ūndēvigintī	900. nōngentī
20. vīgintī	1,000. mille
21. { vīgintī ūnus	5,000. quinque mīlia
{ ūnus et vīgintī	10,000. decem mīlia
	100,000. centum mīlia

## ORDINALS.

1st	prīmus, -a, -um	17th	septīmus decīmus
2d	secundus ( <i>or</i> alter)	18th	duodēvicēsīmus
3d	tertius	19th	ūndēvicēsīmus
4th	quartus	20th	vicēsīmus
5th	quīntus	21st	{ vicēsīmus prīmus ūnus et vicēsīmus
6th	sextus	22d	{ vicēsīmus secundus alter et vicēsīmus
7th	septīmus	29th	ūndētrīcēsīmus
8th	octāvus	30th	trīcēsīmus
9th	nōnus	40th	quadrāgēsīmus
10th	decīmus	100th	centēsīmus
11th	ūndecīmus	101st	centēsīmus prīmus
12th	duodecīmus	200th	ducentēsīmus
13th	tertīus decīmus	1000th	millēsīmus
14th	quartus decīmus	2000th	bis millēsīmus
15th	quīntus decīmus		
16th	sextus decīmus		

## Declension of Numerals.

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	duo	duae	duo
G.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
D.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
A.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	duōs, duo	duās	duo
A.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	trēs	tria	mille	mīlia
G.	trīum	trīum	mille	mīlīum
D.	tribus	tribus	mille	mīlibus
A.	trēs	tria	mille	mīlia
A.	tribus	tribus	mille	mīlibus

## Pronouns.

	FIRST PERSON.		SECOND PERSON.		THIRD PERSON.	
	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
N.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	—	—
G.	meī	nostrūm, -trī	tuī	vestrūm, -trī	suī	sui
D.	mihi	nōbis	tibi	vōbis	sibi	sibi
A.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē
A.	mē	nōbis	tē	vōbis	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē

## Demonstratives.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	hic	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
G.	hūius	hūius	hūius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
D.	huīc	huīc	huīc	hīs	hīs	hīs
A.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
A.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs
N.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
G.	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
D.	illī	illī	illī	illis	illis	illis
A.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
A.	illō	illā	illō	illis	illis	illis
N.	is	ea	id	eī, īi	eae	ea
G.	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
D.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
A.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
A.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
N.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
G.	istius	istius	istius	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
D.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
A.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
A.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	idem	eadem	idem	eīdem	eaedem	eadem
G.	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
D.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eisdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
A.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
A.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
N.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D.	ipsī	ipsi	ipsī	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
A.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
A.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

## Relative.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.			
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
G.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
A.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
A.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

## Interrogative.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.			
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
G.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
A.	quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
A.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

## Indefinite.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.			
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	aliquis	aliqua	aliquid	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
G.	alicūius	alicūius	alicūius	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
D.	alicuī	alicuī	alicuī	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
A.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
A.	aliquo	aliquā	aliquo	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

SINGULAR.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. quīdam	quaedam	quiddam
G. cūiusdam	cūiusdam	cūiusdam
D. cuīdam	cuīdam	cuīdam
A. quendam	quandam	quiddam
A. quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. quidam	quaedam	quaedam
G. quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
D. quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
A. quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
A. quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam



## REGULAR VERBS.

## First Conjugation.—Ā-Verbs.

amō, love.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus.

## INDICATIVE.

*Active Voice.**Passive Voice.*

## PRESENT.

*I love, am loving, do love, etc.**I am loved, etc.*

amō	amāmus	amor	amāmur
amās	amātis	amāris or -re	amāminī
amat	amant	amātur	amantur

## IMPERFECT.

*I loved, was loving, did love, etc.**I was loved, etc.*

amābam	amābāmus	amābar	amābāmur
amābās	amābātis	amābāris or -re	amābāminī
amābat	amābant	amābātur	amābantur

## FUTURE.

*I shall love, etc.**I shall be loved, etc.*

amābō	amābimus	amābor	amābimur
amābis	amābitis	amāberis or -re	amābiminī
amābit	amābunt	amābitur	amābuntur

## PERFECT.

*I have loved, I loved, etc.**I have been (was) loved, etc.*

amāvī	amāvimus	amātus	{	sum	amātī	{	sumus
amāvistī	amāvistis			es			estis
amāvit	amāvērunt or -re			est			sunt

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had loved, etc.*

amāveram	amāverāmus
amāverās	amāverātis
amāverat	amāverant

*I had been loved, etc.*

amātus	eram	amāti	erāmus
	erās		erātis
	erat		erant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have loved, etc.*

amāverō	amāverimus
amāveris	amāveritis
amāverit	amāverint

*I shall have been loved, etc.*

amātus	erō	amātī	erimus
	eris		eritis
	erit		erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

amem	amēmus	amer	amēmur
amēs	amētis	amēris or -re	amēmini
amet	ament	amētur	amentur

## IMPERFECT.

amārem	amārēmus	amārer	amārēmur
amārēs	amārētis	amārēris or -re	amārēmini
amāret	amārent	amārētur	amārentur

## PERFECT.

amāverim	amāverimus	amātus	sim	amātī	simus
amāveris	amāveritis		sis		sitis
amāverit	amāverint		sit		sint

## PLUPERFECT.

amāvissem	amāvissēmus	amātus	essem	amātī	essēmus
amāvissēs	amāvissētis		essēs		essētis
amāvisset	amāvissent		esset		essent

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

amā, *love thou.*amāre, *be thou loved.*amāte, *love ye.*amāminī, *be ye loved.*

## FUTURE.

amātō, *thou shalt love.*amātor, *thou shalt be loved.*amātō, *he shall love.*amātor, *he shall be loved.*amātōte, *you shall love.*

—

amantō, *they shall love.*amantor, *they shall be loved.*

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. amāre, *to love.*amārī, *to be loved.*PERF. amāvisse, *to have loved.*amātus esse, *to have been loved.*FUT. amātūrus esse, *to be about to love.*amātum irī, *to be about to be loved.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. amāns, -antis, *loving.*

PRES. —

FUT. amātūrus, -a, -um, *about to love.*GER.<sup>1</sup> amandus, -a, -um, *to be loved.*

PERF. —

PERF. amātus, -a, -um, *loved, having been loved.*

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

N. —

—

G. amandī, *of loving.*

—

D. amandō, *for loving.*

—

A. amandum, *loving.*A. amātum, *to love.*A. amandō, *by loving.*A. amātū, *to love, to be loved.*<sup>1</sup> Gerundive, sometimes called *future passive participle*.

## Second Conjugation.—Ē-Verbs.

moneō, advise.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus.

## INDICATIVE.

*Active.**Passive.*

## PRESENT.

*I advise, etc.**I am advised, etc.*

moneō      monēmus  
monēs      monētis  
monet      monent

moneor      monēmur  
monēris or -re      monēminī  
monētur      monentur

## IMPERFECT.

*I was advising, etc.**I was advised, etc.*

monēbam      monēbāmus  
monēbās      monēbātis  
monēbat      monēbant

monēbar      monēbāmur  
monēbāris or -re      monēbāminī  
monēbātur      monēbantur

## FUTURE.

*I shall advise, etc.**I shall be advised, etc.*

monēbō      monēbimus  
monēbis      monēbitis  
monēbit      monēbunt

monēbor      monēbimur  
monēberis or -re      monēbiminī  
monēbitur      monēbuntur

## PERFECT.

*I have advised, I advised, etc.      I have been (was) advised, etc.*

monuī      monuimus  
monuistī      monuistis  
monuit      monuērunt or -re

monitus { sum  
              es      monitī { estis  
              est            sunt

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had advised, etc.**I had been advised, etc.*

monueram      monuerāmus  
monuerās      monuerātis  
monuerat      monuerant

monitus { eram      monitī { erāmus  
              erās            erātis  
              erat            erant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have advised, etc.**I shall have been advised, etc.*

monuerō	monuerimus	monitus	{	erō	monitī	{	erimus
monueris	monueritis			eris			eritis
monuerit	monuerint			erit			erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

moneam	moneāmus	monear	moneāmur
moneās	moneātis	moneāris or -re	moneāminī
moneat	moneant	moneātur	moneantur

## IMPERFECT.

monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris or -re	monērēminī
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur

## PERFECT.

monuerim	monuerimus	monitus	{	sim	monitī	{	sīmus
monueris	monueritis			sīs			sītis
monuerit	monuerint			sit			sint

## PLUPERFECT.

monuissem	monuissēmus	monitus	{	essem	monitī	{	essēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis			essēs			essētis
monuisset	monuissent			esset			essent

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

monē, *advise thou.*  
 monēte, *advise ye.*

monēre, *be thou advised.*  
 monēminī, *be ye advised.*

## FUTURE.

monētō, *thou shalt advise.*  
 monētō, *he shall advise.*  
 monētōte, *you shall advise.*  
 monentō, *they shall advise.*

monētor, *thou shalt be advised.*  
 monētor, *he shall be advised.*  
 —  
 monentor, *they shall be advised.*

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. monēre, <i>to advise.</i>	monērī, <i>to be advised.</i>
PERF. monuisse, <i>to have advised.</i>	monitus esse, <i>to have been advised.</i>
FUT. monitūrus esse, <i>to be about to advise.</i>	monitum irī, <i>to be about to be advised.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. monēns, -entis, <i>advising.</i>	PRES. —
FUT. monitūrus, -a, um, <i>about to advise.</i>	GER. monendus, -a, -um, <i>to be advised.</i>
PERF. —	PERF. monitus, -a, -um, <i>advised, having been advised.</i>

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

N. —	—
G. monendī, <i>of advising.</i>	—
D. monendō, <i>for advising.</i>	—
A. monendum, <i>advising.</i>	A. monitum, <i>to advise.</i>
A. monendō, <i>by advising.</i>	A. monitū, <i>to advise, to be advised.</i>

## Third Conjugation.—E-Verbs.

regō, *rule.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus.

## INDICATIVE.

## Active.

## Passive.

## PRESENT.

*I rule, etc.**I am ruled, etc.*

regō	regimus	regor	regimur
regis	regitis	regeris or -re	regiminī
regit	regunt	regitur	reguntur

## IMPERFECT.

*I was ruling, etc.*

regēbam	regēbāmus
regēbās	regēbātis
regēbat	regēbant

*I was ruled, etc.*

regēbar	regēbāmur
regēbāris or -re	regēbāminī
regēbātur	regēbantur

## FUTURE.

*I shall rule, etc.*

regam	regēmus
regēs	regētis
reget	regent

*I shall be ruled, etc.*

regar	regēmur
regēris or -re	regēminī
regētur	regentur

## PERFECT.

*I have ruled, etc.*

rēxī	rēximus
rēxistī	rēxistis
rēxit	rēxērunt or -re

*I have been ruled, etc.*

rēctus	{ sum	rēctī	{ sumus
	{ es		{ estis
	{ est		{ sunt

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had ruled, etc.*

rēxeram	rēxerāmus
rēxerās	rēxerātis
rēxerat	rēxerant

*I had been ruled, etc.*

rēctus	{ eram	rēctī	{ erāmus
	{ erās		{ erātis
	{ erat		{ erant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have ruled, etc.*

rēxerō	rēxerimus
rēxeris	rēxeritis
rēxerit	rēxerint

*I shall have been ruled, etc.*

rēctus	{ erō	rēctī	{ erimus
	{ eris		{ eritis
	{ erit		{ erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

regam	regāmus
regās	regātis
regat	regant

regar	regāmur
regāris or -re	regāminī
regātur	regantur

## IMPERFECT.

regerem	regerēmus	regerer	regerēmur
regerēs	regerētis	regerēris or -re	regerēminī
regeret	regerent	regerētur	regerentur

## PERFECT.

rēxerim	rēxerimus	rēctus	sim	rēctī	sīmus
rēxeris	rēxeritis		sīs		sītis
rēxerit	rēxerint		sit		sint

## PLUPERFECT.

rēxissem	rēxissēmus	rēctus	essem	rēctī	essēmus
rēxissēs	rēxissētis		essēs		essētis
rēxisset	rēxissent		esset		essent

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

rege, <i>rule thou.</i>	regerē, <i>be thou ruled.</i>
regite, <i>rule ye.</i>	regeriminī, <i>be ye ruled.</i>

## FUTURE.

regitō, <i>thou shalt rule.</i>	regitor, <i>thou shalt be ruled.</i>
regitō, <i>he shall rule.</i>	regitor, <i>he shall be ruled.</i>
regitōte, <i>ye shall rule.</i>	—
reguntō, <i>they shall rule.</i>	reguntor, <i>they shall be ruled.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. regere, <i>to rule.</i>	regī, <i>to be ruled.</i>
PERF. rēxisse, <i>to have ruled.</i>	rēctus esse, <i>to have been ruled.</i>
FUT. rēctūrus esse, <i>to be about to rule.</i>	rēctum irī, <i>to be about to be ruled.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. regēns, -entis, <i>ruling.</i>	PRES. —
FUT. rēctūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to rule.</i>	GER. regendus, -a, -um, <i>to be ruled.</i>
PERF. —	PERF. rēctus, -a, -um, <i>ruled, having been ruled.</i>



GERUND.		SUPINE.
N. —		—
G. regendī, <i>of ruling.</i>		—
D. regendō, <i>for ruling.</i>		—
A. regendum, <i>ruling.</i>	A. rēctum, <i>to rule.</i>	
A. regendō, <i>by ruling.</i>	A. rēctū, <i>to rule, to be ruled.</i>	

## Third Conjugation.—Verbs in -iō.

capiō, *take.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: capiō, capere, cēpī, captus.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Active.		Passive.	
<i>I take, etc.</i>		<i>I am taken, etc.</i>	
PRESENT.			
capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
capis	capitis	caperis <i>or</i> -re	capimini
capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur
IMPERFECT.			
<i>I was taking, etc.</i>		<i>I was taken, etc.</i>	
capiebam	capiebāmus	capiebar	capiebāmur
capiebās	capiebātis	capiebāris <i>or</i> -re	capiebāmini
capiebat	capiebant	capiebātur	capiebantur

## FUTURE.

<i>I shall take, etc.</i>		<i>I shall be taken, etc.</i>	
capiam	capiēmus	capiar	capiemur
capies	capietis	capieris <i>or</i> -re	capiemini
capiet	capient	capietur	capientur

## PERFECT.

cēpī, cēpistī, cēpit, etc.	captus sum, es, est, etc.
----------------------------	---------------------------

## PLUPERFECT.

cēperam, cēperās, cēperat, etc.	captus eram, erās, erat, etc.
---------------------------------	-------------------------------

## FUTURE PERFECT.

cēperō, cēperis, cēperit, etc.	captus erō, eris, erit, etc.
--------------------------------	------------------------------

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

capiam, capiās, capiat, etc.      capiar, -iāris *or* -re, -iātur, etc.

## IMPERFECT.

caperem, caperēs, caperet, etc.      caperer, -erēris *or* -re, -erētur, etc.

## PERFECT.

cēperim, cēperis, cēperit, etc.      captus sim, sis, sit, etc.

## PLUPERFECT.

cēpissem, cēpissēs, cēpisset, etc.      captus essem, essēs, esset, etc.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. cape, *take thou.*

capere, *be thou taken.*

capite, *take ye.*

capimini, *be ye taken.*

FUT. capitō, *thou shalt take,*  
etc.

capitor, *thou shalt be taken,*  
etc.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. capere, *to take.*

capī, *to be taken.*

PERF. cēpisse, *to have taken.*

captus esse, *to have been taken.*

FUT. captūrus esse, *to be*  
*about to take.*

captum irī, *to be about to be*  
*taken.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. capiēns, -ientis, *taking.*

PRES. —

FUT. captūrus, *about to take.*

GER. capiendus, *to be taken.*

PERF. —

PERF. captus, *having been taken.*

## GERUND.

G. capiendi, *of taking,*  
etc.

## SUPINE.

A. captum, *to take.*

A. captū, *to take, to be taken.*

## Fourth Conjugation.—Ī-Verbs.

audiō, *hear*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: audiō, audīre, audīvi, audītus.

## INDICATIVE.

*Active.**Passive.*

## PRESENT.

*I hear, etc.**I am heard, etc.*

audiō	audimus	audior	audimur
audīs	audītis	audīris <i>or -re</i>	audimini
audit	audiunt	audītur	audiuntur

## IMPERFECT.

*I was hearing, etc.**I was heard, etc.*

audiēbam	audiēbāmus	audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbās	audiēbātis	audiēbāris <i>or -re</i>	audiēbāmini
audiēbat	audiēbant	audiēbātur	audiēbantur

## FUTURE.

*I shall hear, etc.**I shall be heard, etc.*

audiam	audiēmus	audiar	audiēmur
audiēs	audiētis	audiēris <i>or -re</i>	audiēmini
audiet	audient	audiētur	audientur

## PERFECT.

*I have heard, etc.**I have been heard, etc.*

audīvi	audīvimus	audītus {	sum	audīti {	sumus
audivisti	audivistis		es		estis
audivit	audivērunt <i>or -re</i>		est		sunt

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had heard, etc.**I had been heard, etc.*

audīveram	audīverāmus	audītus	eram	audītī	erāmus
audīverās	audīverātis		erās		erātis
audīverat	audīverant		erat		erant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have heard, etc.**I shall have been heard, etc.*

audīverō	audīverimus	audītus	erō	audītī	erimus
audīveris	audīveritis		eris		eritis
audīverit	audīverint		erit		erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
audiās	audiātis	audiāris or -re	audiāminī
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur

## IMPERFECT.

audirem	audirēmus	audirer	audirēmur
audirēs	audirētis	audirēris or -re	audirēminī
audiret	audirent	audirētur	audirentur

## PERFECT.

audīverim	audīverimus	audītus	sim	audītī	sīmus
audīveris	audīveritis		sīs		sītis
audīverit	audīverint		sit		sint

## PLUPERFECT.

audīvissem	audīvissemus	audītus	essem	audītī	essēmus
audīvisēs	audīvissetis		essēs		essētis
audīvisset	audīvissent		esset		essent

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

audī, *hear thou.*audīre, *be thou heard.*audite, *hear ye.*audimini, *be ye heard.*

## FUTURE.

audītō, *thou shalt hear.*audītor, *thou shalt be heard.*audītō, *he shall hear.*audītor, *he shall be heard.*audītōte, *ye shall hear.*

—

audiuntō, *they shall hear.*audiuntor, *they shall be heard.*

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. audīre, *to hear.*audīrī, *to be heard.*PERF. audīvisse, *to have heard.*audītus esse, *to have been heard.*FUT. audītūrus esse, *to be about to hear.*audītum irī, *to be about to be heard.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. audiēns, -entis, *hearing.*

PRES. —

FUT. audītūrus, -a, -um, *about to hear.*GER. audiendus, -a, -um, *to be heard.*

PERF. —

PERF. audītus, -a, -um, *heard, having been heard.*

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

N. —

—

G. audiendī, *of hearing.*

—

D. audiendō, *for hearing.*

—

A. audiendum, *hearing.*A. audītum, *to hear.*A. audiendō, *by hearing.*A. audītū, *to hear, to be heard.*

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

sum, *be.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: sum, esse, fui, futūrus.

## INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.	PRESENT.	PLURAL.
sum, <i>I am.</i>	sumus, <i>we are.</i>	
es, <i>thou art.</i>	estis, <i>you are.</i>	
est, <i>he (she, it) is.</i>	sunt, <i>they are.</i>	

## IMPERFECT.

eram, <i>I was.</i>	erāmus, <i>we were.</i>
erās, <i>thou wast.</i>	erātis, <i>you were.</i>
erat, <i>he was.</i>	erant, <i>they were.</i>

## FUTURE.

erō, <i>I shall be.</i>	erimus, <i>we shall be.</i>
eris, <i>thou wilt be.</i>	eritis, <i>you will be.</i>
erit, <i>he will be.</i>	erunt, <i>they will be.</i>

## PERFECT.

fui, <i>I have been, was.</i>	fuimus, <i>we have been, were.</i>
fuisti, <i>thou hast been, wast.</i>	fulistis, <i>you have been, were.</i>
fuit, <i>he has been, was.</i>	{ fuērunt or fuēre, <i>they have been, were.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

fueram, <i>I had been.</i>	fuerāmus, <i>we had been.</i>
fuerās, <i>thou hadst been.</i>	fuerātis, <i>you had been.</i>
fuerat, <i>he had been.</i>	fuerant, <i>they had been.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

fuerō, <i>I shall have been.</i>	fuerimus, <i>we shall have been.</i>
fueris, <i>thou wilt have been.</i>	fueritis, <i>you will have been.</i>
fuerit, <i>he will have been.</i>	fuerint, <i>they will have been.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
sim	sīmus	essem	essēmus
sīs	sītis	essēs	essētis
sit	sint	esset	essent
PERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
fuerim	fuerimus	fuissem	fuissēmus
fueris	fueritis	fuissēs	fuissētis
fuerit	fuerint	fuisset	fuissent

## IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
es, <i>be thou.</i>	este, <i>be ye.</i>
FUTURE.	
estō, <i>thou shalt be.</i>	estōte, <i>ye shall be.</i>
estō, <i>he shall be.</i>	suntō, <i>they shall be.</i>

INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLE.
PRES.	esse, <i>to be.</i>	
PERF.	fuisse, <i>to have been.</i>	
FUT.	futūrus esse, <i>to be about to be.</i>	futūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to be.</i>

**possum, posse, potuī, —, *be able, can.***

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES. possum	possumus	possim	possīmus
potes	potestis	possīs	possītis
potest	possunt	possit	possint
IMP. poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
FUT. poterō	poterimus		
PERF. potuī	potuimus	potuerim	potuerimus
PLUP. potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
F. P. potuerō	potuerimus		

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. posse	PERF. potuisse
-------------	----------------

**prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus, benefit.**

## INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES. prōsum	prōsumus	prōsim	prōsimus
prōdes	prōdestis	prōsīs	prōsītis
prōdest	prōsunt	prōsit	prōsint
IMP. prōderam	prōderāmus	prōdessem	prōdessēmus
FUT. prōderō	prōderimus		
PERF. prōfuī	prōfuimus	prōfuerim	prōfuerimus
PLUP. prōfueram	prōfuerāmus	prōfuissem	prōfuissēmus
F. P. prōfuerō	prōfuerimus		

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. prōdes, prōdeste      FUT. prōdestō, prōdestōte

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. prōdesse      PERF. prōfuisse      FUT. prōfutūrus esse

## PARTICIPLE.

FUT. prōfutūrus, -a, -um

**volō, velle, voluī, —, be willing, will, wish.**

**nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, be unwilling, will not.**

**mālō, mālle, māluī, —, be more willing, prefer.**

## INDICATIVE.

PRES. volō	nōlō	mālō
vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
vult	nōn vult	māvult
volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMP. volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT. volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.	mālam, mālēs, etc.
PERF. voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUP. volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. P. voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō



SUBJUNCTIVE.		
PRES. velim	nōlim	mālim
velis	nōlis	mālis
velit	nōlit	mālit
velimus	nōlimus	mālimus
velitis	nōlitis	mālitis
velint	nōlint	mālint
IMP. vellem	nōllem	māllem
PERF. voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUP. voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE.		
PRES. —	nōlī	—
	nōlite	
FUT. —	nōlitō, etc.	—

INFINITIVE.		
PRES. velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF. voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE.		
PRES. volēns	nōlēns	—

eō, Ire, Ivī (II), itūrus, go.

fīō, fierī, factus sum (supplies passive to faciō), *make, be made, become.*

INDICATIVE.				
PRES. eō	imus	fīō	fīmus	
is	itis	fīs	fītis	
it	eunt	fīt	fīunt	
IMP. ibam		fīēbam		
FUT. ibō		fīam		
PERF. ii		factus sum		
PLUP. ieram		factus eram		
F. P. ierō		factus erō		

		SUBJUNCTIVE.		
PRES.	eam		fiam	
IMP.	irem		fierem	
PERF.	ierim		factus sim	
PLUP.	iissem		factus essem	

		IMPERATIVE.		
PRES.	I	ite	fī	fite
FUT.	{ itō	itōte	—	—
	{ itō	euntō	—	—

		INFINITIVE.		
PRES.	ire		fieri	
PERF.	isse		factus esse	
FUT.	itūrus esse		factum iri	

PARTICIPLES.			
PRES.	iēns, <i>Gen.</i> euntis	PRES.	—
FUT.	itūrus, -a, -um	GER.	faciendus
PERF.	—	PERF.	factus

GERUND.		SUPINE.
N.	—	—
G.	eundi	—
D.	eundō	—
A.	eundum	A. itum
A.	eundō	A. itū

*ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, bear, carry, endure.*

		INDICATIVE.		
		Active.	Passive.	
PRES.	{ ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	{ fers	fertis	ferris or -re	ferimini
	{ fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
IMP.	ferēbam		ferēbar	
FUT.	feram		ferar	
PERF.	tulī		lātus sum	
PLUP.	tuleram		lātus eram	
F. P.	tulerō		lātus erō	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	feram	ferar
IMP.	ferrem	ferrer
PERF.	tulerim	lātus sim
PLUP.	tulissem	lātus essem

## IMPERATIVE.

*Active.**Passive.*

PRES.	fer	ferte	[ferre]	ferimini
FUT.	{ fertō	fertōte	fertor	—
	{ fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	ferre	ferri
PERF.	tulisse	lātus esse
FUT.	lāturus esse	lātum iri

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	ferēns	PRES.	—
FUT.	lāturus	GER.	ferendus
PERF.	—	PERF.	lātus

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

—	—
G. ferendī	—
D. ferendō	—
A. ferendum	A. lātum
A. ferendō	A. lātū

A  
B  
C  
D  
E  
F  
G  
H  
I  
K  
L  
M  
N  
O  
P  
Q  
R  
S  
T  
U  
V

# VOCABULARY

## A

- A.**, see **Aulus**.  
**ā**, **ab**, prep. with **abl.**, *from, by, on the side of*.  
**abdō**, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *put away, withdraw, hide*.  
**addūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead away*.  
**abstineō**, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *hold from, keep from*.  
**absum**, -esse, -āfuī, *be away or distant*.  
**āc**, see **atque** (**āc** is used only before consonants).  
**accēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *go to, approach, be added*.  
**accidō**, -cidere, -cidī, *fall to or upon, befall, happen*.  
**accipiō**, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [**capiō**], *take to, receive, accept*.  
**accurrō**, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *run or hasten to*.  
**accūsō** (1) [**causa**], *call to account, reprimand, accuse*.  
**aciēs**, -ēī, *f., battle-line*.  
**ācritēr**, adv., *sharply, fiercely*.  
**ad**, prep. with **acc.**, *to, toward*,  
*against, near*; (with numerals) adv., *about*.  
**addūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead or bring to, influence*.  
**adgredior**, see **aggredior**.  
**adhibeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *bring in, summon*.  
**admīror** (1), *wonder at, admire*.  
**admittō**, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [**ad** + **mittō**] (3), *let go; admit, receive; become guilty of, commit*. **equō admissō**, *with his horse at full speed* (i. 22).  
**adorior**, -orīrī, -ortus sum, *rise against, attack*.  
**adsciscō**, -sciscere, -scīvī, -scitum, *take to, receive, adopt*.  
**adsum**, -esse, -fuī, *be at hand or near, be present, assist*.  
**adventus**, -ūs, m. [**veniō**], *arrival, approach*.  
**adversus**, -a, -um (perf. pass. part. of **advertō**), *turned to, opposite, unfavorable, unsuccessful*.  
**advertō**, -tere, -tī, -sum [**ad** + **vertō**] (3), *turn to, direct, turn*.  
**animus advertō**, *perceive, notice, observe*.

**aedificium**, -ī, n., *a building.*

**Aeduus**, -ī, m., *an Æduan.*

**aegerrimō**, adv. (sup. of aegrē),  
*with the greatest difficulty.*

**aequō** (1), *make even or equal.*

**afficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [ad  
+ faciō] (3), *do something to,*  
*treat, use; visit with, afflict,*  
*trouble, weaken, impair. magnō*  
*dolōre affici, to be greatly an-*  
*noyed (i. 2). suppliciō afficere,*  
*to punish (i. 27).*

**affinitās**, -ātis, f., *alliance by*  
*marriage, kinship.*

**ager**, agrī, m., *land under culti-*  
*vation, field, territory, domain;*  
*pl., lands, territory, country,*  
*the country.*

**aggredior**, -gredī, -gressus sum  
[ad + gradior, *step*], *go to, ap-*  
*proach, attack.*

**agmen**, -minis [agō], n., *army on*  
*the march, marching column;*  
*line of march. agmen clau-*  
*dere, to bring up the rear.*  
**novissimum agmen**, *the rear.*  
**primum agmen**, *the van.*

**agō**, agere, ēgī, āctum, *put in*  
*motion, drive, discuss.*

**aliēnus**, -a, -um [alius], *another's,*  
*foreign, unfavorable.*

**aliquī** (-quis), -qua, -quod (-quid),  
*some, any.*

**alius**, -a, -ud, *another, other (of*  
*more than two).*

**Allobrogēs**, -um (acc. Allobrogās,  
i. 14), m., pl., *a Gallic people*

*in the northeastern part of*  
*"the Province," between the*  
*Rhone and the Alps. i. 6, 10,*  
*11, 14, 28.*

**alō**, alere, aluī, alitum (altum),  
*nourish, sustain.*

**Alpēs**, -ium, f., *the Alps.*

**alter**, -era, -erum, *one (of two),*  
*the other, second.*

**altitūdō**, -inis, f. [altus], *height,*  
*depth.*

**altus**, -a, -um, *high, deep.*

**Ambarri**, -ōrum [Kel. ambi, =  
Lat. ambī + Arar], m. pl., *a*  
*people on both sides of the*  
*Arar (Saône) near its junction*  
*with the Rhone; intimately*  
*connected with the Ædui.*  
i. 11, 14.

**amicitia**, -ae, f. [amicus], *friend-*  
*ship.*

**amicus**, -a, -um, *friendly; (as*  
*subst.) m., friend.*

**āmittō**, -mittere, -misi, -misum,  
*send away, let go, lose.*

**amor**, -ōris, m. [amō], *love, de-*  
*sire.*

**amplus**, -a, -um, *large or full,*  
*ample.*

**anceps**, -cipitis [ambō, *both* +  
*caput, head*], *two-headed, two-*  
*fold, doubtful.*

**angustiae**, -ārum, f. [angō,  
*squeeze*], *narrowness, a narrow*  
*pass or defile.*

**angustus**, -a, -um [angō], *nar-*  
*row.*

**animadvertō**, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *attend to, punish.*

**animus**, -ī, m., *soul, mind, feeling, spirit, courage.*

**annus**, -ī, m., *a year.*

**annuus**, -a, -um, *for a year, annual.*

**ante**, adv. or prep. with acc., *before.*

**antēa**, adv., *formerly.*

**antiquus**, -a, -um [ante], *ancient, former.*

**aperiō**, -īre, -uī, -tum, *uncover, open, disclose.*

**appellō** (1), *call.*

**Aprīlis**, -e, *of April, April.*

**apud**, prep. with acc., *among, near, with.*

**Aquilēia**, -ae, f., *a city at the head of the Adriatic Sea. See n. to chap. X. i. 10.*

**Aquitāni**, -ōrum, m., *the Aquitani, Aquitanians.*

**Aquitānia**, -ae, f., *Aquitania.*

**Arar**, -aris, acc., -im [Kel., = 'sluggish'], m., *Arar river, now the Saône. It rises in the Vosges Mts., and flows southward into the Rhone. i. 12, 13, 16.*

**arbitror** (1), *decide, think.*

**arma**, -ōrum, n., *arms.*

**ascendō**, ascendere, ascendī, ascēsum [ad + scandō, climb], *climb up, ascend.*

**ascēsus**, -ūs, m., *a climbing up, ascent.*

**atque**, ac [ad + que], conj.:

1. Copulative, *and, and also, and even, and in particular.*

2. Comparative, after words of likeness or unlikeness, *as, than.*

**attingō**, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum [ad + tangō, touch], *touch or border upon, lie near to, reach.*

**auctōritās**, -ātis, f., *influence, authority.*

**audācia**, -ae, f. [audāx], *boldness.*

**audācter**, adv., *boldly.*

**audeō**, audēre, ausus sum, *dare.*

**augeō**, augēre, auxī, auctum, *increase.*

**Aulus** (abbr. A.), *Aulus, a Roman name.*

**aut**, conj., *aut . . . aut, either . . . or.*

**autem**, conj., *on the other hand, but, moreover.*

**auxilium**, -ī, n. [augeō], *help, aid; (in pl.) auxiliaries.*

**āvertō**, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *turn off or away.*

**avus**, -ī, m., *grandfather.*

## B

**Belgae**, -ārum, m., *the Belgae, Belgians, a powerful people of Northeastern Gaul.*

**bellō** (1), *make or wage war, fight.*

**bellicōsus**, -a, -um, *fond of war, warlike.*

**beneficium**, -i, n., *kindness, benefit, favor.*

**Bibracte**, -is, n., *Bibracte.*

**bīdium**, -i, n., *two days.*

**biennium**, -i, n. [annus], *two years.*

**bipartitō**, adv. [pars], *in two divisions.*

**Biturigēs**, -um [Kel., = 'World-kings,' or 'Ever kings'], m. pl., a people in Central Gaul, across the Liger (Loire) from the Ædui.

**Bōī** (or Bōjī), -ōrum, m., pl., a Celtic people widely diffused over Central Europe, whose name survives in *Bohemia*; 32,000 joined the Helvetii in their migration, the remnant surviving being settled with the Ædui.

**bonitās**, -tātis [bonus], f., *goodness, excellence*; of land, *fertility* (i. 28).

**bonus**, -a, -um, comp. *melior*, sup. *optimus*, adj., *good, advantageous*; *pleasant, well-disposed, friendly*. *bonō animō esse*, *to be favorably disposed.* (i. 6.)

**bracchium**, -i, n., *the forearm.*

## C

**C.** (abbr. for Gāius), *Caius* or *Gaius*, a Roman name.

**cadō**, *cadere*, *cecidī*, *cāsum*, *fall.*

**Caesar**, *Caesaris*, m., full name *Gāius Iulius Caesar.*

**calamitās**, -ātis, f., *disaster, defeat.*

**capiō**, *capere*, *cēpī*, *captum*, *take, seize.*

**caput**, *capitis*, n., *head.*

**carrus**, i, m., *cart.*

**Cassianus**, -a, -um, *Cassian, of Cassius.*

**Cassius**, -i, m., *Lucius Cassius Longinus*, praetor B.C. 111; when consul, 107 B.C., he engaged in battle with the Tigurini in the territory of the Allobroges, and was defeated and slain. i. 7, 12.

**castellum**, -i, n. [diminutive of *castrum*], *a small fort, fortress, redoubt.*

**Casticus**, -i, m., *Casticus.*

**castra**, -ōrum, n. [*castrum*, *fort*], *a fortified camp, camp.*

**cāsus**, -ūs [cadō], *a falling, fall, accident, calamity, chance.*

**Catamantälœdis**, -is [Kel., = 'Man of Even Temper'], m., foremost man of the Sequani before Cæsar's time. i. 3.

**Caturigēs**, -um [Kel., = 'Battle-Kings'], m. pl., a Gallic people in the eastern part of the Province. i. 10.

**causa**, -ae, f., *cause, reason.*

**cavēō**, *cavēre*, *cāvī*, *cautum*, *take precautions.*

**celeriter** (comp. *celerius*, sup. *cellerrimē*), adv., *quickly.*

**Celtae**, -ārum [Kel.], m., pl.

- Celts*, inhabitants of that part of Gaul between the Garonne and the Seine, extending from the Atlantic to the Alps. They belonged to the great Celtic family, and were divided into many states or tribes. i. i.
- cēnsus**, -ūs, m., *enumeration*.
- centum**, indecl. num., *one hundred*.
- certus**, -a, -um, *sure, certain*.  
**aliquem certiōrem facere**, to inform some one.
- Centrōnes**, -um, m., *the Centrones*.
- cibārius**, -a, -um, *pertaining to food*; (as subst.) *cibāria, -ōrum, n., food, provisions*.
- circiter**, adv., *about*.
- circuitus**, -ūs, m. [circum + eō], *a going round, circuit*.
- circum**, prep. with acc., *around, about*.
- circumveniō**, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *surround*.
- citerior**, -ōris, comp. adj. (no positive), *nearer, hither*.
- citrā**, adv. and prep. with acc., *this side, within*.
- civitas**, -ātis, f., *citizenship, state, citizens*.
- claudō**, claudere, clausī, clausum, *shut, close*.
- cliēna**, -entis, m. f., *client, dependent*.
- coemō**, -emere, -ēmī, -ēemptum, *purchase*.
- coepī**, coepisse, defect. verb, *began*.
- coerceō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *control*.
- cōgnōscō**, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, *learn thoroughly*; (in perf.) *have learned, know*.
- cōgō**, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum, *drive together, collect, compel*.
- cohortor** (i), *urge earnestly, exhort, encourage*.
- colligō** (i), *bind together*.
- collis**, -is, m., *hill*.
- collocō** (i), *place together, station*.  
**nūptum collocāre**, to give in marriage.
- colloquor**, -loquī, -locūtus sum, *speak together, converse*.
- combūrō**, -būrere, -būssi, -būstum, *burn up, consume*.
- commemorō** (i), *recount, state, mention*.
- commeō** (i), *resort to or visit (frequently)*.
- committō**, -mittere, -mīsī, -misum, *send together, commit, combine, join*.
- commodē**, adv., *conveniently*.
- commonefaciō**, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *remind forcibly*.
- commoveō**, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *move deeply, disturb, excite*.
- communiō** (4), *fortify completely, intrench*. [change.]
- commūtātiō**, -ōnis, f., *a changing*.
- commūtō** (i), *change entirely, reverse*.



**comparō** (1), *prepare, furnish, equip.*

**comperiō**, -perire, -peri, -pertum, *ascertain.*

**complector**, -plecti, -plexus sum, *embrace.*

**compleō**, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum, *fill, fill up, complete.*

**complūrēs**, -a (-ia), *several, many.*

**comportō**, *bring or carry together.*

**cōnātum**, -ī, n., or **cōnātus**, -ūs, m., *trial, attempt.*

**concedō**, -cēdere, cessī, -cessūrus, [com- + cēdō] (3), *withdraw, depart; give up, yield, bow, submit; allow, grant; grant permission, permit.*

**concido**, -cidere, -cidī, -cisum, *cut down, slay.*

**conciliō** (1), *call together, win over, conciliate.*

**concilium**, -ī, n., *assembly, council.*

**concursum**, -ūs, m., *running together, onset.*

**condiciō**, -ōnis, f., *a speaking together, agreement, terms.*

**condōnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [com- + dōnō] (1), *give up, forgive, overlook, excuse, pardon.* i. 20,

**condūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead or bring together, hire.*

**cōnferō**, cōnferre, contulī, collātum, *bring together, collect, compare: sē cōnferre, to treat.*

**cōnfertus**, -a, -um, *crowded.*

**cōnficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *do thoroughly, complete, accomplish.*

**cōnfidō**, -fidere, -fisis sum, *trust in, rely on.*

**cōnfirmō** (1), *make firm, establish, assure, promise.*

**coniciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *throw together, conjecture.*

**coniūrātiō**, -ōnis, f. [iūrō, swear], *a swearing together, conspiracy.*

**cōnor** (1), *try, attempt.*

**conquirō**, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitum, *search out.*

**cōnsanguineus**, -a, -um, *related by blood; (as subst.) m., kinsman.*

**cōnasciscō**, -sciscere, -scivī, -scitum, *decree, appoint.*

**cōnscius**, -a, -um [sciō], *knowing, conscious.*

**cōnscrībō**, -scrībere, -scripsī, -scriptum, *write together, enroll, levy.*

**cōnsequor**, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *follow up, pursue, obtain.*

**Cōnsidius**, -ī, m., *Considius.*

**cōnsidō**, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum, *settle, encamp.*

**cōnsilium**, -ī, n., *counsel, plan.*

**cōnsistō**, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, *take a stand, stand still, stop.*

**cōnsōlor** (1), *console, comfort, solace.*

**cōnspectus**, -ūs, m. [cōnspiciō], *a looking at, sight.*

**cōspiciō**, -spicere, -spexī, -spec-  
tum, *see, perceive.*

**cōspicor** (1), *perceive.*

**cōstituō**, -stituere, -stitui, -sti-  
tūtum [statuō, *set*], *set together,*  
*arrange, determine.*

**cōsuēscō**, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suē-  
tum, *accustom, habituate*; (in  
perf.) *to have become (= be)*  
*accustomed, be wont.*

**cōsul**, -ulis, m., *consul*, one of  
the chief magistrates at Rome,  
of whom there were two,  
chosen annually.

**cōnsūmō**, -sūmere, -sūmpsī,  
-sūmptum, *destroy, consume.*

**contendō**, -tendere, -tendī, -ten-  
tum [tendō, *stretch*], *stretch*  
*tight, strive, fight, hasten.*

**continenter** [continēns], adv.,  
*constantly, incessantly, without*  
*interruption, continually.*

**contineō**, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum  
[com- + teneō] (2), *hold to-*  
*gether; hold; hold back, keep,*  
*retain, detain, shut in*; of  
places and regions, *hem in,*  
*bound, border.*

**contrā**, prep. with acc., and adv.,  
*opposite, against.* [nity.

**contumēlia**, -ae, f., *affront, indig-*

**conveniō**, -venīrē, -vēnī, -ventum,  
*come together, meet, assemble*;  
**convenit** (impers.), *it is fitting,*  
*it is agreed.*

**conventus**, -ūs, m., *assembly,*  
*meeting.*

**convertō**, -vertere, -vertī, -versum,  
*turn. signa convertere, change*  
*front, wheel about.*

**convocō** (1), *call together, sum-*  
*mon, assemble.*

**cōpia**, -ae, f., *plenty*; (in pl.)  
*forces, troops.*

**cōpiōsus**, -a, -um, *well supplied,*  
*plentiful, abounding.*

**cotidiānus** (quo-), -a, -um, *daily,*  
*usual.*

**cotidiē** (quo-), adv., *daily.*

**Crassus**, -ī, m.:

1. *Marcus Licinius Crassus*,  
consul in B.C. 70, member of  
the triumvirate with Cæsar and  
Pompey; consul again in 55;  
perished in the disastrous Par-  
thian expedition, B.C. 53. i. 21.

2. *Publius Licinius Crassus*,  
younger son of the triumvir;  
lieutenant of Cæsar in Gaul,  
B.C. 58-56, where he distin-  
guished himself; he returned  
to Rome in 55, followed his  
father to the East and fell in  
the same battle.

**cremō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *burn.*  
**igni cremāre**, *to consume by fire,*  
*burn to death* (i. 4).

**creō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *create,*  
*make; choose, elect, appoint.*

**crēscō**, crēscere, crēvī, crētum (3),  
inch., *grow, increase; become*  
*great, become powerful* (i. 20);  
of a river, *become swollen.*

**cultus**, -ūs [colō], m., *cultivation,*

*care; mode of life, civilization.*

**cum**, prep. with ablative only, *with; of association, with, along with, in the company of, together with; of comparison, with, as over against, compared with; of manner and circumstance, with, under, amid, at; of time, together with, at the same time with.* With the personal pronouns and with **qui**, **cum** is enclitic; as, **mēcum**, **nōbiscum**, **quibuscum**.

**cum** (**quum**), conj., *when, since, although.*

**cupidē**, adv., *eagerly.*

**cupiditās**, -ātis, f., *eager desire, longing, cupidity.*

**cupidus**, -a, -um, *desirous of, eager for.*

**cupiō**, -ere, -ivī (ii), -itum, *desire, favor.*

**cūrō** (i), *care for; (with object and gerundive), have.*

**custōs**, -ōdis, m., f., *guard, sentinel.*

## D

**damnō** (i), *condemn.*

**dē**, prep. with abl., *down from, from, for, concerning.*

**dēbeō**, **dēbere**, **dēbuī**, **dēbitum** [**dē** + **habeō**] (2), *owe; pass., be due; followed by infin., ought, must, should.*

**decem**, indecl. num., *ten.*

**dēcipiō**, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *entrap, deceive.*

**decuriō**, -ōnis, m. (the leader of a squad of ten cavalry), *a decurion.*

**dēditicius**, -ī [**dēditus**, from **dēdō**], adj., *that has surrendered, subject.* As subst., **dēditiciī**, -ōrum, m, pl., *prisoners of war, captives.*

**dēditiō**, -ōnis [**dēdō**] f., *surrender.* **accipere** or **recipere** in **dēditiōnem**, *to receive by capitulation.* in **dēditiōnem venire**, *to surrender.*

**dēfendō**, -fendere, -fendī, -fēsum, *keep or ward off, defend.*

**dēfessus**, -a, -um (perf. part. of **dēfetiscor**), *wearied, exhausted.*

**dēiciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *throw or cast down, dislodge.*

**dēinde**, adv., *then (of consequence or sequence).*

**dēliberō** (i), *ponder, deliberate.*

**dēligō**, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctum [**legō**, *choose*], *pick out, select.*

**dēminuō**, -minuere, -minuī, -minūtum [**minus**], *lessen, diminish.*

**dēmōnstrō** (i), *show plainly, point out.*

**dēmum**, adv., *at length.*

**dēnique**, adv., *at length, lastly.*

**dēpōnō**, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *place or lay aside.*

**dēpopulor** (i), *ravage, lay waste.*

**dēprecātor**, -ōris, m., *mediator.*

**dēsīgnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dē + signō, *mark*] (1), *mark out, point out, mean, designate*. i. 18.

**dēsistō**, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum [dē + sistō] (3), *stand off from; leave off, cease, desist from, stop, give up*. **dēsistere sententiā**, *to give up the notion*.

**dēspērō** (1) [spēs, *hope*], *be hopeless, despair*.

**dēspiciō**, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, *look down on, despise*.

**dēstituō**, -stituere, -stituī, -stitutum [statuō], *set aside, forsake, abandon*.

**dēstringō**, -stringere, -strinxī, strictum [stringō, *draw*], *draw off, unsheathe, draw*.

**dēterreo** (2), *frighten off, deter, discourage*.

**deus**, -ī, m., *god*.

**dexter**, -tera, -terum, and -tra, -trum, comp. *dexterior*, sup. *dextimus*, adj., *right*.

**dextra**, -ae [dexter, sc. *manus*], f., *right hand*. i. 20.

**dīcō**, dicere, dixī, dictum, *say, tell, speak*.

**dictiō**, -ōnis, f., *a speaking, pleading*.

**diēs**, diēi, m. and f., *day; time* (i. 7). **multō diēs**, *late in the day* (i. 22). **in diēs**, *day by day, every day*. **diem ex diē**, *day after day*. (i. 16).

**differō**, differre, distulī, dilātum, *carry or bear apart, differ, defer*.

**difficilis**, -e [dis + facilis], *not easy, difficult*.

**dimittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *send apart, dismiss*.

**discōdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessurus [dis- + cēdō] (3), *go apart, disperse, scatter; depart, withdraw, leave, go away, go off*. **ab armis discōdere**, *to lay down one's arms*.

**discō**, discere, didici, *learn*.

**disiciō** (disjiciō), -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [dis- + iaciō] (3), *drive asunder; disperse, scatter, rout* (i. 25; iii. 20).

**dispōnō**, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *place apart, arrange*.

**dītissimus**, -a, -um (sup. of *dives*), *richest*.

**diū**, adv., *for a long time*.

**diūturnus**, -a, -um [diū], *of long duration, long*.

**Divitiācus**, -ī, m., *an Aeduan chief*.

**Divicō**, -ōnis, m., *a Helvetian chief*.

**dividō**, -videre, -visī, -visum, *divide, separate*.

**dō**, dare, dedi, datum, *give*.

**dolō** (2), *suffer pain, grieve*.

**dolor**, -ōris, m., *pain, grief*.

**dolus**, -ī, m., *treachery, deceit*.

**domus**, -ūs, *house, home*. **domī**, *at home*.

**dubitātiō**, -ōnis, f., *hesitation*.

**dubitō** (1), *doubt, hesitate*.

**dubius**, -a, -um, *doubtful*.

**ducentī**, -ae, -a [duo + centum],  
*two hundred.*

**dūcō**, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *lead,*  
*draw, consider.*

**dum**, conj., *while, until.*

**Dumnorix**, -igis [Kel., = 'Great King'], m., an Æduan, brother of Divitiacus, and son-in-law of Orgetorix; a bitter enemy of Cæsar, and apparently leader of the Æduan anti-Roman party, until slain by Cæsar's orders while trying to escape from him, B.C. 54. i. 3, 9, 18, 19, 20.

**duo**, duae, duo, *two.*

**duodecim** [decem], indecl. num.,  
*twelve.*

**dux**, ducis [dūcō], m., f., *leader,*  
*guide.*

## E

**ē**, ex, prep. with abl., *from, out of.*

**ēdūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum,  
*lead forth, draw out.*

**effēmīnō** (i), *weaken, enervate.*

**effērō**, efferre, extulī, ēlātum,  
*bear away or out, lift up, elate.*

**ego** (dat. mihi, acc. mē), *I.*

**ēgredior**, -gredī, -gressus sum, *go out, march forth.*

**ēgregius**, -a, -um [ex + grex, *herd, crowd*], adj., *eminent, marked, distinguished, excellent.*

**emō**, emere, ēmī, ēmptum, *buy.*

**ēmīttō**, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum,  
*send forth, discharge.*

**enim**, conj., *for.*

**ēnūntiō** (i), *tell out, reveal, report.*

**eō**, ire, īvī (ii), itum, *go.*

**eō**, adv., *to that place, thither.*

**eōdem**, adv., *to the same place.*

**eques**, equitis, *rider, horseman, knight*; (in pl.) *cavalry.*

**equester**, -tris, -tre [eques], *belonging to a horseman, cavalry, equestrian.*

**equitātus**, -ūs, m., *cavalry.*

**equus**, -ī, m., *horse.*

**ēripiō**, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum [rapiō], *snatch away, rescue.*  
**sē ēripere**, *to escape.*

**et**, conj., *and.* **et . . . et**, *both . . . and.*

**etiam** [et + iam], conj., *also; even.* **nōn solum . . . sed etiam**, *not only . . . but also.*

**ēvellō**, -vellere, -velli, -vulsum,  
*pull or tear out.*

**ex**, see **ē**.

**exemplum**, -ī, n., *example.*

**exeō**, -ire, -īvī (ii), -itum, *go out.*

**exercitus**, -ūs [exerceō, *exercise*],  
*an exercised, trained body; an army.*

**existimātiō**, -ōnis, f., *opinion.*

**existimō** (i), *reckon, think.*

**expediō**, -pedire, -pedīvī, -peditum [ex + pēs] (4), *disengage, set free; get ready, make ready.*

**expeditus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus [part. of *expe-*

diō], adj., *unincumbered, light-armed; ready, easy*. **legiōēs expeditae**, *legions without baggage*. As subst., **expeditus**, -i, m., *light-armed soldier*.

**expellō**, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum [ex + pellō] (3), *drive out, drive away, remove, expel*.

**explōrātor**, -ōris, m. [explōrō, *investigate*], *scout, spy*.

**expūgnō** (1), *take by storm, overpower*.

**exsequor**, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *follow out or up, enforce*.

**expectō** (1), *look out, await, expect*.

**extrā**, adv. and prep. with acc., *without, beyond*.

**extrēmus**, -a, -um (sup. from *exter*), *outermost, furthest, extreme*.

**exūrō**, -ūrere, -ūssī, -ūstum, *burn up*.

## F

**facile**, used as adv., *easily*.

**facilis**, -e, *easy*.

**faciō**, *facere*, *fēcī*, *factum*, *make, do*.

**facultās**, -ātis, f. [faciō], *means or opportunity of doing, opportunity, means*.

**famēs**, -is, f., *hunger, want*.

**familia**, -ae, f., *slaves of a household, household, retinue*.

**familiāris**, -e [familia], *belonging to the household, private; (as*

subst.) *friend*. **rēs familiāris**, *private property*.

**faveō**, *favēre*, *fāvī*, *fautum*, *favor*.

**ferē**, adv., *almost*.

**ferō**, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātum*, *bear, carry, bring, inflict*.

**ferrum**, -ī, n., *iron*.

**fidēs**, -eī, f., *confidence, faith, assurance of good faith, protection*.

**filia**, -ae, f., *daughter*.

**filius**, -ī, m., *son*.

**finis**, -is, m., *end, limit, boundary; (in pl.) territory, confines*.

**finitimus**, -a, -um [finis], *bordering upon, adjoining, neighboring; (as subst.) neighbors*.

**fiō**, *fieri*, *factus sum*, *be made or done, happen* (used as pass. of *faciō*).

**firmus**, -a, -um, *strong, firm*.

**flāgitō** (1), *demand*.

**fleō**, *flēre*, *flēvī*, *flētum*, *weep*.

**flūmen**, -inis, n. [fluō], *a flowing stream, river*.

**fluō**, *fluere*, *flūxī*, *fluxum*, *flow*.

**fortis**, -e, *strong, brave*.

**fortiter**, adv., *bravely*.

**fortitūdō**, -inis, f. [fortis], *bravery*.

**fortūna**, -ae, f., *chance, fortune*.

**fossa**, -ae, f. [fodiō, *dig*], *ditch, trench*.

**frāter**, *frātris*, m., *brother*.

**frāternus**, -a, -um, *pertaining to a brother, brotherly, fraternal*.

**frigus**, *frigoris*, n., *cold, cold weather; pl., seasons of cold, cold spells*.

E  
F  
G  
H  
I  
K  
L  
M  
N  
O  
P  
Q  
R  
S  
T  
U  
V

**fructus**, -ūs, m., *crops, fruit*.  
**frumentārius**, -a, -um [frūmen-  
 tum], *abounding in grain,*  
*fruitful*.  
**frumentum**, -ī, n., *grain*.  
**fuga**, -ae, f. [fugiō, *flee*], *flight*.  
**fugitivus**, -ī, m., *runaway slave*.

## G

**Gabīnius**, -ī, m., a Roman name.  
**Gallia**, -ae, f., *Gaul*.  
**Gallicus**, -a, -um, *Gallic*.  
**Gallus**, -ī, m., a *Gaul*.  
**Garumna**, -ae, m., *the Garonne*  
 (a river of Gaul).  
**Genāva**, -ae, f., *Geneva*.  
**Germānī**, -ōrum, m., *the Ger-*  
*mans*.  
**gerō**, gerere, gessi, gestum, *carry*  
*on, wage, do*.  
**gladius**, -ī, m., *sword*.  
**glōria**, -ae, f., *glory*.  
**glōrior** (1), *glory, boast*.  
**Graecus**, -a, -um, *Greek, Grecian*.  
**Grāiocellī**, -ōrum, m., *the Graio-*  
*celi*.  
**grātia**, -ae, f., *favor, popularity*.  
**graviter**, adv. [gravis], *heavily,*  
*severely*. **graviter ferro**, *be an-*  
*noyed or vexed*.

## H

**habeō** (2), *have, hold*.  
**Helvētia**, -ae, f., *Helvetia* (now  
 Switzerland).

**Helvētius**, -a, -um, adj., *of the*  
*Helvetii, Helvetian*. **civitas**  
**Helvētia**, *the State of the Hel-*  
*vetii, Helvetian State*, divided  
 into four cantons, the names  
 of two of which, **pāgus Tigur-**  
**rinus**, **pāgus Verbigenus**, are  
 known (i. 12). As subst., **Hel-**  
**vētīl**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Helve-*  
*tians, Helvetii* (i. 1-29, 30, 31,  
 40).

**hīberna**, -ōrum, n., *winter quar-*  
*ters*.

**hīc**, haec, hōc, *this*.

**hiemō** (1), [hiems, *winter*], *pass*  
*the winter*.

**Hispania**, -ae, f., *Spain*.

**homō**, -inis, m. f., *a human being,*  
*man*.

**honor**, -ōris, m., *honor, distinc-*  
*tion, office*.

**hōra**, -ae, f., *hour*.

**hortor** (1), *arouse, urge*.

**hostis**, -is, m. f., *stranger, (public)*  
*enemy; (in pl.) the enemy*.

**hūmānitās**, -ātis, f., *refinement*.

## I (vowel)

**ibi**, adv., *in that place, there*.

**ictus**, -ūs, m., *stroke, blow*.

**īdem**, eadem, idem, *the same*.

**īdūs**, -uum, f. pl., *the Ides*, the  
 fifteenth day of March, May,  
 July, and October; the thir-  
 teenth day of other months.  
 i. 7.

**ignis**, -is, m., *fire*.

**ignōrō** (1), [in, neg. + gnārus, *knowing*], *not know, be ignorant*.

**ille**, illa, illud, *that* (used of what is remote).

**illic** [ille], adv., *there*.

**immortālis**, -e, *immortal*.

**impedimentum**, -i, n., *impediment, hindrance*; (in pl.) *heavy baggage, baggage-train*.

**impediō** (4), *obstruct, hamper*.

**impendeō**, -ēre [pendeō, *hang*], *overhang, impend*.

**imperium**, -i, n., *a command, right of command, supreme power*.

**imperō** (1), *command, enjoin, make requisition for*.

**impetrō** (1), *obtain by entreaty, accomplish*.

**impetus**, -ūs, m. [peto], *attack, assault*.

**importō** (1), *bring in, import*.

**improbus**, -a, -um, *base, wicked*.

**imprōvisō**, adv. [prō + visus, *seen*], *unawares, unexpectedly*.

**impūne**, adv. [in + poena, *punishment*], *without punishment, with impunity*.

**impūnitās**, -ātis, f., *freedom from punishment, impunity*.

**in**, prep. with acc. (of motion), *into, to, against*; with abl. (of rest), *in, on, over*.

**in-**, inseparable prefix = *un-, not*, as in **inaudītus**, *unheard*.

**incendō**, -cendere, -cendi, -cēsum, *set fire to*.

**incitō** (1) [citō, *urge*], *urge on, incite*.

**incolō**, -colere, -colui, -cultum [colō, *cultivate*], *dwell in, inhabit*.

**incommodum**, -i, n. [commodus, *convenient*], *an inconvenience, disadvantage, disaster*.

**incrēdibilis**, -e [crēdō, *believe*], *incredible*.

**inde**, adv., *from that place, thence*.

**indiciū**, -i, n., *information, evidence*.

**inducō**, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, *lead in or into, lead on, induce*.

**inferior**, -ius [inferus], *lower* (in place); *later* (in time).

**inferō**, inferre, intulī, illātum, *bring into or upon, wage upon, attack*.

**inflectō**, -flectere, -flexī, -flexum, *bend in, curve*.

**inflūō**, -fluere, -flūxi, -fluxum, *flow into, flow*.

**inimicus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus [in- + amicus], adj., *unfriendly, hostile*. As subst., **inimicus**, -i, m., *enemy, personal enemy*, as distinguished from **hostis**, *a public enemy*.

**initium**, -i, n. [in + eō], *beginning*.

**iniūria**, -ae, f. [iūs, *right*], *wrong, injustice*.

G  
H  
I  
K  
L  
M  
N  
O  
P  
Q  
R  
S  
T  
U  
V



**inissū**, m. (abl. of assumed *inissus*), *without command*.

**inopia**, -ae, f., *need, lack*.

**inopināns**, -antis, *unawares*.

**insciēns**, -entis [sciō, know], *not knowing, unaware*.

**insequor**, -sequi, -secūtus sum, *follow up, pursue*.

**insidiae**, -ārum, f., *ambuscade, treachery*.

**insignis**, -e, *remarkable*; (as subst.) n., *sign, decoration*.

**insolenter**, adv., *insultingly*.

**instituō**, -stituerē, -stitui, -stitūtum, *set up, establish*.

**institutum**, -ī, n., *an established course, custom, institution*.

**instō**, -stāre, -stiti, -stātum, *stand upon or near, approach, attack*.

**instruō**, -struere, -struxi, -strūctum, *build, draw up*.

**intellegō** (-ligō), -legere, -lēxi, -lēctum, *learn, understand*.

**inter**, prep. with acc., *between, among*.

**intercēdō**, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *go between, interpose, intercede*.

**interclūdō**, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *shut off*.

**interdiū**, adv., *during the day, by day*.

**interdum**, adv., *between whiles, sometimes*.

**interea**, adv., *meanwhile*.

**interficiō**, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum, *kill*.

**interim**, adv., *meanwhile*.

**intermittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *leave or break off, interrupt*.

**interneciō**, -ōnis, f., *extermination, massacre*.

**interpre**, -etis, m. f., *interpreter*.

**intersum**, -esse, -fui, *be between, intervene*.

**intervallum**, -ī, n., *interval*.

**invitus**, -a, -um, *unwilling*.

**ipse**, ipsa, ipsum, dem. pron., *self, himself, herself, etc.*

**is**, ea, id, dem. pron., *this, that, he, she, it, unemphatic*.

**ita**, adv., *so, thus*.

**Italia**, -ae, f., *Italy*.

**itaque**, conj., *and so, therefore*.

**item**, adv., *in like manner, likewise, so also*.

**iter**, itineris [cf. eō, ire], n., *journey, line of march, march; road, route. māgnū iter*, forced march, from 20 to 25 miles a day.

### I (consonant)

**iactō** (i), *toss, discuss*.

**iam**, adv., *now, already, at length*.

**iubeō**, iubēre, iussi, iussum, *order*.

**iūdicium** (iūdicium), -ī [iūdex, judge]. n., *legal judgment, decision, decree; place of judgment, trial* (i. 4); *opinion, judgment*.

**iūdicō** (i), *judge*.

**iugum**, -ī, n., *yoke, ridge*.

**iumentum**, -ī, n., *yoke or draught animal, beast of burden.*

**iungō**, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctum, *join.*

**iūra**, -ae, m., the mountain range running from the Rhine to the Rhone.

**iūs**, iūrus, n., *right, justice, law.*

**iūsiurandum**, iūrisiurandī, n., *oath.*

**iūstitia**, -ae, f., *justice.*

**iuvō**, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, *help, aid.*  
**iuvat** (impers.), *it pleases.*

## K

**Kalendae** (Calendae), -ārum, f., *the Calends* (the first day of a month).

## L

**L.**, see **Lūcius**.

**Lābiēnus**, -ī, m., *Titus Labienus*, Cæsar's chief lieutenant-general, afterwards deserted to Pompey, and fell B.C. 45 at Munda.

**laccessō**, -ere, -īvī, -itum [obsolete] *laciō*, *entice*] (3), *arouse, provoke, annoy, assail, attack.*

**lacrima**, -ae, f., *tear.*

**lacus**, -ūs, m., *lake.*

**largior**, largīri, largītus [largus, *abundant*] (4), dep., *give freely, impart, bestow, bribe* (i. 18).

**largiter** [largus, *abundant*], adv., *abundantly, much.* **largiter**

**posse**, *to have great influence* (i. 18).

**largitiō**, -ōnis [largior], f., *lavish giving, bribery.* i. 9.

**lātē**, adv. [lātus], *broadly, widely.*

**lātitudō**, -inis, f. [lātus], *width.*

**lātius**, see **lātē**.

**Latobrigī**, -ōrum, m. pl., a tribe about the head-waters of the Danube, bordering on the Tulingi. i. 5, 28, 29.

**lātrō**, -ōnis, m., *freebooter, robber.*

**lātūrus**, see **ferō**.

**lātus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *broad, wide*; of territory, *extensive.*

**latus**, -eris, n., *side*; of an army, *flank.* **latus apertum**, *exposed flank.* **ab latere**, *on the flank.*

**lēgatiō**, -ōnis, f., *embassy.*

**lēgātus**, -ī, m., *ambassador, lieutenant.*

**legiō**, -ōnis, f., *legion.*

**Lemannus**, -ī, m., in Cæsar always with **lacus**, *Lake Geneva.*

**lēnitās**, -ātis, f., *smoothness, gentleness.*

**lēx**, lēgis, f., *law.*

**liberālītās**, -ātis, f., *generosity, liberality.*

**liberē**, adv., *freely.*

**liberī**, -ōrum, m., *children.*

**libertās**, -ātis, f., *freedom, liberty.*

**liceor** (2), *bid* (at an auction).

**licet**, licēre, licuit, impers., *it is permitted.*

**Lingonēs**, -um, m., *the Lingones.*

**lingua**, -ae, f., *tongue, language*.  
**linter**, -tris, f., *boat, skiff*. i. 12.  
**Liscus**, -i, m., chief magistrate  
 (vergobret) of the Aedui, B.C.  
 58. i. 16, 17, 18.  
**littera** (litera), -ae, f., *a letter of  
 the alphabet*; (in pl.) *a letter*.  
**locus**, -i, m. (in pl., n.), *place*.  
**longē**, adv. [longus, *long*], *far,  
 by far*.  
**longitūdō**, -inis, f. [longus],  
*length*.  
**loquor**, loquī, locūtus sum, *speak*.  
**Lūcius**, -i (abbr. L.), a Roman  
 name.  
**lūx**, lūcis, f., *light*.

## M

**M.**, see **Mārcus**.  
**magis**, comp. adv. (sup. māximē),  
*more, rather*.  
**magistrātus**, -ūs, m., *magistracy,  
 magistrate*.  
**māgnopere**, adv., *greatly, espe-  
 cially*.  
**māgnus**, -a, -um (comp. māior,  
 sup. māximus), *great, large*.  
**malefīcium**, -i, n., *mischief,  
 wickedness*.  
**mandō** (i), *entrust, order*.  
**manus**, -ūs, f., *hand, armed force*.  
**Mārcus**, -i, m., a Roman name.  
**matara**, -ae, f., *a Gallic javelin*.  
**māter**, mātris, f., *mother, matron*.  
**mātrimōnium**, -i [māter], n.,  
*marriage*. in mātrimōnium

*dare, to give in marriage* (i. 3).  
 in mātrimōnium dūcere, *to  
 marry* (i. 9).

**Matrona**, -ae, f., *Marne*, which  
 rises near the head-waters of  
 the Meuse (Mosa) and flows to  
 the northwest, joining the  
 Seine (Sequana) four miles  
 above Paris, after a course of  
 more than two hundred miles.  
 i. 1.

**mātūrō** (i), *ripen, hasten*.

**mātūrus**, -a, -um, *ripe, complete,  
 early*.

**māximē**, sup. adv. [māgnus],  
*very greatly, most, especially*.

**māximus**, see **māgnus**.

**mē** (acc. of ego), *me*.

**medius**, -a, -um, *in the middle of*.  
**memoria**, -ae, f., *recollection,  
 memory*.

**mēnsis**, -is, m., *month*.

**mercātor**, -ōris, m., *merchant*.

**mereor** (2), *deserve, earn, merit*.

**meritum**, -i, n., *desert, merit*.

**Messāla**, -ae, m., *Marcus Vale-  
 rius Messala*, consul B.C. 61.  
 i. 2, 35.

**mētiōr**, mētirī, mēnsus sum,  
*measure*.

**mihi** (dat. of ego), *me, to me*.

**mīles**, -itis, m., *soldier*.

**mīlitāris**, -e, *pertaining to a sol-  
 dier, military*.

**mīlle**, indecl. adj., *a thousand*.  
 As subst., **mīlia**, -um, n. pl.,  
*thousand, thousands*.

**minimē**, adv., *least, by no means*.  
**minimus**, -a, -um (sup. of parvus, small), *least, very little*.  
**minor** (comp. of parvus), *smaller, less*.

**minuō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtum [minus], *make smaller, lessen*.

**minus**, adv. [minor], *less*.

**mittō**, mittere, mīsī, missum, *send*.

**modo**, adv., *only*; see **etiam**.

**molō**, -ere, -uī, -itum (3), *grind*.  
**molita cibāria**, *meal, coarse flour*.

**moneō** (2), *advise, remind, warn, admonish*.

**mōns**, montis, m., *mountain*.

**morior**, morī, mortuus sum, *die*.

**moror** (1), *tarry, delay*.

**mors**, mortis, f. [morior], *death*.

**mōs**, mōris, m., *manner, custom*; (in pl.) *customs, character*.

**moveō**, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, *move*.

**mulier**, mulieris, f., *woman*.

**multitūdō**, -inis, f. [multus], *great number, multitude*.

**multō** or **multum**, comp. plūs, sup. plūrimum [multus], adv., *much, by far, greatly*. **multum posse** or **valēre**, *to have great power, influence*.

**multum**, adv., see **multō**.

**multus**, -a, -um, adj., comp. plūs, sup. plūrimus, *much*; pl., *many*. As subst., m. pl., **multi**, -ōrum, *many people*; **plūrēs**,

-ium, *more, quite a number, several*; neut. sing., **multum**, *much*; **plūs**, *more*; **plūrimum**, *very much*: neut. pl., **multa**, *many things, many considerations*. **multō diū**, *late in the day, when the day was far spent* (i. 22).

**mūniō** (4) [moenia, walls], *build a wall, fortify*.

**mūnitiō**, -ōnis, f., *fortification*.

**mūrus**, -ī, m., *wall*.

## N

**nam**, conj., *for*.

**Nammēius**, -ī, m., a Helvetian chief.

**nātūra**, -ae, f., *nature, character*.

**nāvis**, -is, f., *ship*.

**nē**, conj., *not to, that . . . not, lest*; (after words of fearing) *that*.

**-ne**, enclitic interrog. particle.

**nec**, see **neque**.

**necessāriō**, adv., *necessarily, unavoidably*.

**necessārius**, -a, -um, *necessary*; (as subst.) m., *kinsman*.

**negō** (1), *say not, deny*.

**nēmō**, -inis, m. f., *no one*.

**neque** (nec), conj., *and not, and also*; **neque . . . neque**, *neither . . . nor*.

**nervus**, -ī, m., *sinew, tendon*; (in pl.) *power, strength*.

**nēve** (neu), adv., *and not, nor*.

**nex**, necis, f., *death*.

M  
N  
O  
P  
Q  
R  
S  
T  
U  
V

**nihil** (nihilum), indecl. noun,  
*nothing.*

**nisi**, conj., *if not, unless.*

**nitor**, nīti, nīsus or nīxus sum,  
*rest upon, rely upon, strive.*

**nobilis**, -e [nōscō, know], *famous,*  
*high-born, noble.*

**nōbilitās**, -ātis, f., *nobility, nobles.*

**noctū**, adv. [nox], *by night.*

**nōlō**, nōlle, nōluī, *not wish, be*  
*unwilling.*

**nōmen**, -inis, n., *name.*

**nōminātim**, adv., *by name.*

**nōn**, adv., *not.*

**nōnāgintā**, *ninety.*

**nōndum**, adv., *not yet.*

**nōnnūllus**, -a, -um (not none)  
*some*; (in pl. as subst.) *some,*  
*several.*

**nōnnūquam** (not never), *some-*  
*times.*

**Nōrēia**, -ae, f., *Noreia* (a town of  
the Norici).

**Nōricus**, -a, -um, *of the Norici,*  
*Norican.*

**nōs** (nom. and acc. pl. of ego),  
*we, us.*

**noster**, -tra, -trum [nōs], *our, ours.*

**novem**, *nine.*

**novus**, -a, -um, *new*; *novae rēs,*  
*new state of affairs, revolution.*

**nox**, noctis, f., *night.*

**nūbō**, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptum,  
*veil one's self* (for marriage),  
*marry.*

**nūdus**, -a, -um, *naked, exposed,*  
*unprotected.*

**nūllus**, -a, -um [nē + ūllus, any],  
*not any, no, none.*

**num**, interrog. particle implying  
a negative answer.

**numerus**, -ī, m., *number.*

**nūntiō** (1), *report, announce.*

**nūntium**, -ī, n., *report, message.*

**nūntius**, -ī, m., *one who reports,*  
*messenger.*

**nūper**, *recently.*

## O

**ob**, prep. with acc., *on account of*;  
(in composition) *to, against.*

**obaerātus**, -ī, m., *one involved in*  
*debt, debtor.*

**obiciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *throw*  
*in front, oppose.*

**oblīviscor**, oblīviscī, oblītus sum,  
*forget.*

**obsecrō** (1), *beseech, implore.*

**obses**, -idis, m. f., *hostage.*

**obstringō**, -stringere, -strīnxī,  
-strictum, *bind.*

**obtineō**, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum,  
*hold, possess.*

**occāsus**, -ūs, m., *falling, setting.*

**occidō**, -cidere, -cīdī, -cisum  
[caedō, cut], *cut off, kill, slay.*

**occultō** (1), *hide, conceal.*

**occupō** (1) [capiō], *take possession*  
*of, seize, occupy.*

**Ōceanus**, -ī, m., *ocean.*

**Ocelum**, -ī, n., *a city of Gallia*  
*Cisalpina.*

**octō**, *eight.*

**octōdecim**, *eighteen.*

**octōgintā**, *eighty.*

**oculus**, -ī, m., *eye.*

**ōdī**, *ōdisse*, def. verb, *hate.*

**offendō**, -fendere, -fendī, -fēsum, *strike against, stumble, offend.*

**offēnsiō**, -ōnis, f., *a striking against, offence.*

**omnīnō**, adv. [omnis], *altogether, in all.*

**omnis**, -e, *all, every.*

**oportet**, -ēre, -uit, impers. verb, *it is necessary, one ought.*

**oppidum**, -ī, n., *stronghold, town.*

**oppūgnō** (1), *fight against, storm.*

**ops**, opis (not used in nom. sing.), *power, strength; (in pl.) resources, means.*

**opus**, -eris, n., *work.*

**ōrātiō**, -ōnis [ōrō], f., *speech, words, address, plea.*

**Orgetorix**, -igis, m. [Kel., = 'The King who slays,' 'All-slaughtering King'], a Helvetian lord who formed a plot to seize the supreme power, but was apprehended and died, or committed suicide, before judgment was pronounced. i. 2, 3, 4, 5, 9, 26.

**oriēns**, -entis [part. of orior], adj., *rising. orientem sōlem, the rising sun = the east (i. 1).*

**orior**, orīrī, ortus (4), dep., *rise, arise; begin, spring from; start from.*

**ōrō** (1), *speak, plead, entreat.*

**ostendō**, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum

[ob + tendō, *stretch*], *expose to view, exhibit.*

## P

**pābulātiō**, -ōnis, f., *foraging.*

**pābulum**, -ī, n., *food, fodder.*

**pācō** (1) [pax], *pacify, subdue.*

**paene**, adv., *almost.*

**pāgus**, -ī, m., *canton, district.*

**pār**, paris, *equal.*

**parātus**, -a, -um [p. p. of parō], *prepared, ready.*

**pāreō** (2), *obey.*

**pārō** (1), *prepare, provide.*

**pars**, partis, f., *part, direction.*

**parvus**, -a, -um (comp. minor, sup. minimus), *small, little.*

**passus**, -ūs, m., *step, pace (five Roman feet). milia passuum, miles.*

**pateō**, -ēre, -uī, *lie open, extend.*

**pater**, patris, m., *father.*

**pator**, patī, passus sum, *suffer, permit.*

**paucī**, -ae, -a, *few.*

**pāx**, pācis, f., *peace.*

**pellō**, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, *drive, beat.*

**per**, prep. with acc., *through, by means of.*

**perducō**, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead through.*

**perfacilis**, -e, *very easy.*

**perficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [faciō], *do thoroughly, accomplish, complete.*

**perfringō**, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum, *break through*.

**perfuga**, -ae, m., *deserter*.

**perfugiō**, -fugere, -fūgī, *flee, desert*.

**periculum**, -ī, n., *danger, risk*.

**peritus**, -a, -um, *experienced, practised, skilled*.

**permovēō**, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum [per + moveō] (2), *deeply move, greatly disturb, alarm; influence, induce*.

**perniciēs**, -ēī, f., *destruction*.

**perpaucus**, -a, -um, *very little, very few*.

**perumpō**, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *break through*.

**persequor**, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *follow after, pursue*.

**perseverō** (1), *continue, persist*.

**persolvō**, -solvere, -solvī, -solutum, *pay in full*.

**persuādēō**, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *convince, persuade*.

**perterreō** (2), *frighten thoroughly*.

**pertineō**, -tinēre, -tinuī, — [per + teneō] (2), *reach out, extend; pertain to, concern, belong to, have to do with*.

**perveniō**, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, *come through, arrive*.

**pēs**, pedis, m., *foot*.

**petō**, -ere, -īvī (-iī), -itum, *attack, aim at, seek*.

**phalanx**, -angis, Greek acc. sing. phalanga [φάλαγξ], f., *compact host, mass, phalanx*.

**pīlum**, ī, n., a heavy *spear* (with shaft about 4 feet long) thrown by Roman legionaries.

**Pisō**, -ōnis, m., name of persons mentioned in the Gallic War:

1. *Lucius Calpurnius Piso Caesoninus*, consul B.C. 112; killed B.C. 107, when serving as lieutenant in Gaul with the consul *Lucius Cassius Longinus*. i. 12.

2. *Lucius Calpurnius Piso Caesoninus*, consul with *Aulus Gabinius*, B.C. 58, and father-in-law of Cæsar. i. 6, 12.

3. *Marcus Pupius Piso Calpurnianus*, consul with *M. Valerius Messala*, B.C. 61. i. 2, 35.

**plēbs**, plēbis (plēbēs, -ēī), f., *common people, plebeians*.

**plūrimus**, -a, -um (sup. of multus), *very much, most, very many*.

**plūs**, plūris (comp. of multus), *more*.

**poena**, -ae, f., *punishment, penalty*.

**polliceor** (2), *promise*.

**pōnō**, pōnere, posuī, positum, *put, place*.

**pōns**, pontis, m., *bridge*.

**populatiō**, -ōnis, f., *ravaging*.

**populor** (1), *devastate*.

**populus**, -ī, m., *people*.

**portō** (1), *carry, bring*.

**portōrium**, -ī, n., *tax, tariff*.

**poscō**, -ere, poposci, *demand*.  
**possessiō**, -ōnis, f., *possession*.  
**possum**, posse, potui [potis, *able* + sum], *be able, can*.  
**post**, prep. with acc., *behind, after*.  
**postea**, adv., *afterwards*.  
**posterus**, -a, -um, *following*.  
**postquam**, conj., *after, as soon as*.  
**postridiū**, adv., *on the day after*.  
**potēns**, -entis, *powerful*.  
**potentia**, -ae, f., *power, ability*.  
**potestās**, -ātis, f., *power*.  
**potior**, potiri, potitus sum, *get or obtain possession of*.  
**prae**, prep. with abl., *before*; (in composition) *before, over, very*.  
**praecedō**, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *go before, surpass, precede*.  
**praecipio**, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *take in advance, order, instruct*.  
**praeferō**, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *bear before, choose, prefer*.  
**praeicio**, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, *set before or over, place in command*.  
**praemittō**, -mittere, -misi, -misum, *send before or in advance*.  
**praeoptō** (1), *choose rather, prefer*.  
**praesentia**, -ae, f., *the present moment*.  
**praesertim**, adv., *especially*.  
**praesidium**, -i, n., *protection, guard, garrison*.  
**praestō**, -stāre, -stiti, -stitum [prae + stō] (1), *excel, surpass; ex-*

*hibit, manifest, show; discharge, perform*. Impers. **praestat**, *it is preferable, it is better*. **officium praestāre**, *to do one's duty*.  
**praestō**, adv., *at hand*. **praestō esse**, *to meet*.  
**praesum**, -esse, -fui, — [prae + sum], irr., *be or preside over, be at the head of, have command of, have charge of*.  
**praeter**, prep. with acc., *past, by, beyond, except*.  
**praetereō**, -īre, -ivi (-iī), -itum, *go by or beyond*; (p. p. as subst.) **praeterita**, -ōrum, n., *the past*.  
**praetor**, -ōris [praeitor, from praeeō], m., *general, commander* (i. 21); **praetor**, a Roman magistrate, next to the consul in rank, charged with judicial functions.  
**prēndō** (prehendō), **prēndere**, **prēndi**, **prēnsūm**, *lay hold of, grasp*.  
**pretium**, -i, n., *price*.  
**prex**, **precis**, f., *prayer*.  
**pridiū**, adv., *on the day before*.  
**primum**, adv., *in the first place, first*.  
**primus**, -a, -um, sup. adj., *first*.  
**princeps**, -ipis, *chief*; (as subst.) *chief, leader*.  
**principātus**, -ūs, m., *leadership, chief position, preëminence*.  
**pristinus**, -a, -um, *former*.  
**prius**, comp. adv., *sooner*.



**priusquam**, adv., *before, sooner than.*

**privātim**, adv., *privately, as private citizens.* [mal.

**privātus**, -a, -um, *private, personal*,  
**prō**, prep. with abl., *before, for, in behalf of, in proportion to.*

**probō** (1), *try, prove, approve.*

**Procillus**, -ī, m., *Gaius Valerius Procillus* (a Gallic chief).

**prōdō**, -dere, -didī, -ditum [dō],  
*transmit, hand down.*

**proelium**, -ī, n., *battle.*

**profectiō**, -ōnis, f., *setting out, departure.*

**proficiscor**, proficiscī, profectus sum, *set out, depart.*

**prohibeō** (2), *keep from, prohibit, prevent.*

**prōiciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum,  
*throw forth, cast down.*

**prope**, adv. and prep. with acc.,  
*near.*

**propinquus**, -a, -um, *near, neighboring; (as subst.) relative, kinsman.*

**prōpōnō**, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *place or set forth, declare.*

**propter**, prep. with acc., *on account of.*

**propterea**, adv., *for this reason.*

**prōspiciō**, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *look forward, look out for.*

**prōvincia**, -ae, f., *province, subject territory; in Cæsar often the Province, the part of Transalpine Gaul subdued by the*

Romans before B.C. 58, lying between the Mediterranean sea and the upper part of the Rhone, the Cévennes mountains, and the upper part of the Garonne river.

**proximē**, adv. [prope], *next, nearest, last.*

**proximus**, -a, -um, *nearest, last.*

**pūblicē** [pūblicus], adv., *in the name of the state, as a state, publicly*, opposed in meaning to **privātim**.

**pūblicus**, -a, -um, *public.*

**Pūblius**, -ī (abbr. P.), m., a Roman name.

**puer**, -ī, m., *boy, child.*

**pūgna**, -ae, f., *fight, battle.*

**pūgnō** (1), *fight.*

**pūrgō** (1), *clear, acquit.*

**putō** (1), *compute, reckon, think.*

**Pyrenæus**, -a, -um [?], adj., *only with montes, the Pyrenees mountains, between France and Spain.*

## Q

**quā**, adv., *by which way, where.*

**quadrāgintā**, *forty.*

**quadringenti**, -ae, -a, *four hundred.*

**quaerō**, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesitum, *seek, ask.*

**quālis**, -e, *of what sort.*

**quam**, adv. and conj., *how, as, than; (with sup.) as possible.*

**quantus**, -a, -um, *how great; tan-*

tus . . . quantus, so (or as) great  
 . . . as. [reason.]

quā rē, adv., wherefore, for this  
 quārtus, -a, -um, fourth.

quattuor, four.

-que, enclitic conj., and.

queror, querī, questus sum, com-  
 plain.

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron. and  
 interrog. adj., who, which, what.

quidem, indeed; nō . . . quidem,  
 not even, not either.

quīn, conj., that, but that, from;  
 quīn etiam, nay more.

quīndecim, fifteen.

quīngentī, -ae, -a, five hundred.

quīnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num., five  
 each, five.

quīnque, five.

quīntus, -a, -um, fifth.

quis, quid, interrog. pron., who?  
 which? what? (as indef.) any  
 one, any thing.

quisquam, quidquam (quic-  
 quam), any one, any thing.

quisque, quaeque, quidque,  
 (quodque), each one, every one,  
 each, every.

quod, conj., because.

quoque, conj., also.

quum, see cum.

## R

rapīna, -ae, f., plunder, rapine.

ratiō, -ōnis, f., reckoning, plan,  
 reason.

ratis, -is, f., raft.

Rauracī, -ōrum, m., the Rauraci.

re- (red-), inseparable prefix with  
 the force of back, again.

recēns, -entis, fresh, recent.

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum,  
 take back, receive.

redeō, -ire, -ii, -itum, go back, re-  
 turn.

redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēptum  
 [emō, buy], buy back, buy up.

redintegrō (I), restore, renew.

reditiō, -ōnis, f., a going back, re-  
 turn.

redūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum,  
 lead back, withdraw.

referō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, bring  
 or carry back, report.

rēgnum, -ī, n. [rēx], sovereignty,  
 royal power.

rēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw  
 back.

relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lic-  
 tum, leave behind, abandon.

reliquus, -a, -um, the rest of, re-  
 maining; (as subst.) remain-  
 der.

reminiscor, -ī, call to mind, re-  
 member.

removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mō-  
 tum, move back.

renūntiō (I), bring back word,  
 report.

repellō, repellere, reppulī, repul-  
 sum, drive back, repulse.

repentīnus, -a, -um, sudden, un-  
 expected.

A  
R  
S  
T  
I  
T  
U  
V

**reperiō**, reperire, repperi, reper-  
tum, *find out, discover.*

**reprehendō**, -prehendere, -pre-  
hendi, -prehensum, *blame, cen-  
sure.*

**repugnō** (1), *fight back, resist.*

**rēs**, rei, f., *matter, affair; cir-  
cumstance, fact, transaction; ob-  
ject, project, business.* **rēs**  
**militāris**, *warfare, military*  
*science.* **rēs novae**, *a revolution.*  
**rēs publica**, *the state, public*  
*business, public interest.* **quā rē**,  
*wherefore, and for this*  
*reason.* **rēs necessaria**, *exi-  
gency.*

**rescindō**, -scindere, -scidi, -scis-  
sum [re- + scindō] (3), *cut*  
*down, break up, destroy.*

**resciō**, -sciscere, -scivī or -scii,  
-scitum [re- + sciscō, *inquire*]  
(3), *discover, find out.* i. 28.

**resistō**, -sistere, -stiti, *stand back,*  
*stop, resist.*

**respondeō**, -spondere, -spondi,  
-spōnsum, *answer, reply.*

**respōnsum**, -i, n., *reply.*

**rēs publica** (rēspūblica) rei pū-  
licae, f., *state.*

**restituō**, -uere, -ui, -ūtum, *set up*  
*again, restore.*

**retineō**, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum  
[teneō], *hold back, retain.*

**revertō**, -vertere, -verti, -versum,  
*turn back, return; revertor*, -i,  
dep., *is generally used in the*  
*tenses of incomplete action.*

**Rhēnus**, -i, m., *the Rhine.*

**Rhodanus**, -i, m., *the Rhone.*

**ripa**, -ae, f., *bank (of a river).*

**rogō** (1), *ask.*

**Rōmānus**, -a, -um, *Roman; (as*  
*subst.) Rōmāni*, -ōrum, m., *the*  
*Romans.*

**rota**, -ae, f., *wheel.*

**rūrus**, adv., *again.*

## S

**saepe**, adv., *often.*

**salūs**, -ūtis, f., *safety.*

**Santonēs**, -um, or **Santoni**,  
-ōrum, m. pl., *a Gallic people*  
*on the seacoast north of the*  
*Garonne; the name survives*  
*in Saintes and Saintonge.* i. 10,  
11.

**sarcinae**, -ārum [SAR in sarcio],  
f. pl., *baggage, packs, the load*  
*that each soldier carried on his*  
*back.*

**satis**, adv. and adj., *sufficiently,*  
*enough, sufficient.*

**satisfaciō**, -facere, -fēcī, -factum,  
*do enough, satisfy, make amends.*

**scelus**, -eris, n., *crime.*

**sciō**, scīre, scivī, scitum, *know.*

**scūtum**, -i, n., *shield.*

**sēcrētō**, adv., *secretly, in pri-  
vate.*

**secundus**, -a, -um, *following, fa-  
vorable, second.*

**sed**, conj., *but.*

**sēdecim** [sex], *sixteen.*

**seditiōsus**, -a, -um, *seditions*.

**Segusiāvi**, -ōrum, m., *the Segusiavi*.

**sēmentia**, -is, f., *sowing, planting*.

**semper**, adv., *always*.

**senātus**, -ūs, m., *senate*.

**senex**, *senis*, old; (as subst.) *old man*.

**sēnī**, -ae, -a, distrib. num., *six each, six*.

**sentiō**, *sentire*, sēnsī, sēnsū, *be sensible of, feel, perceive, think*.

**sēparātim**, adv., *separately*.

**septentrionēs** (*septem, triones*), -um, m. pl., *the seven plough oxen* (the stars of the Great Bear). — Hence, *the north*. — Also (by an error), in the sing., **septentrio**, -ōnis, *the north*; **ē septentrionibus**, *in the north*; **sub septentrionibus**, *in the north, towards the north*.

**septimus**, -a, -um, *seventh*.

**sepultūra**, -ae, f., *burial*.

**Sēquana**, -ae, m., *the Seine*.

**Sēquani**, -ōrum, m. pl., a Gallic state west of the Jura; chief city Vesontio, now *Besançon*. In their strifes with the Ædui they secured the aid of Ariovistus, who made them subject to himself.

**sequor**, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow*.

**servitūs**, -ūtis, f., *slavery*.

**servus**, -ī, m., *slave*.

**seu**, see **sive**.

**sex**, *six*.

**sexāgintā**, *sixty*.

**sī**, conj., *if*.

**signum**, -ī, n., *signal, standard*.

**silva**, -ae, f., *forest*.

**simul**, adv., *at the same time, at once*.

**sīn**, conj., *but if*.

**sine**, prep. with abl., *without*.

**singulī**, -ae, -a, distrib. num., *one at a time, one by one, single*.

**sinister**, -tra, -trum, *left*.

**sive** (**seu**), conj., *or if*; **sive . . . sive**, *whether . . . or, either . . . or*.

**socer**, *socerī*, m., *father-in-law*.

**socius**, -ī, m., *ally*.

**sōl**, *sōlis*, m., *the sun*.

**sōlum**, adv., *only*.

**solum**, -ī, n., *soil, ground*.

**sōlus**, -a, -um (gen. -ius, dat. -ī), *alone, only*.

**soror**, -ōris, f., *sister*.

**spatium**, -ī, n., *space, period*.

**spectō** (ī), *look, face*.

**spērō** (ī) [spēs], *hope, look for*.

**spēs**, -ei, f., *hope*.

**sponte**, abl. and **spontis**, gen., only forms in use of an obsolete nom. **spōns**, f., *of one's own accord, willingly*. **suā sponte**, *of their own accord, unaided; by their own influence* (i. 9).

**statuō**, ere, ui, ūtum, v. a., *set up, resolve, deem, decide*. **gravioriter statuere in aliquem**, *to*

S  
T  
U  
V

*take strong measures against.*  
**nōn expectandum sibi statuit,**  
*decided that he ought not to wait*  
**[stō].**

**studeō, -ēre, -uī,** *be eager for, desire.*

**studium, -ī, n.,** *zeal, earnestness, regard, desire; — in populum Rōmānum, affection for the R. p.*

**sub, prep. (i.) w. acc.,** *under* (of motion); — **iugum mittere,** *send under the yoke; — primam nostram aciem successerunt,* *came up close to our front line. (ii.) with abl., under.*

**subducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum,** *draw up or away, withdraw.*

**subeō, -īre, -iī, -itum,** *go under or near, undergo.*

**subiciō (subiiciō), -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [sub + iaciō] (3),** *throw from beneath* (i. 26).

**sublevō (i),** *lift up, aid.*

**subsistō, -sistere, -stitī,** *stand still, withstand, resist.*

**subsum, -esse, -fuī,** *be under or near.*

**subvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum,** *carry or bring up, convey.*

**succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum,** *go under or near, approach, succeed.*

**sui, sibi, sē or sēsē, nom.** *wanting, reflex. pron., himself, herself, itself, themselves, him, her.*

**Sulla, -ae, m.,** *Lucius Cornelius*

*Sulla, born B.C. 138; Consul B.C. 88, Dictator, 81–79 B.C.; leader of the aristocratic party in the first of the Civil Wars, and deadly enemy of Marius; died B.C. 78. i. 21.*

**sum, esse, fuī, be.**

**summa, -ae, f.,** *highest point, sum.*

**summoveō (sub-), -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum,** *remove.*

**summus, -a, -um (pos. superus),** *highest.*

**sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūmptum,** *take, claim.*

**sūmptus, -ūs, m.,** *expense.*

**super, adv. and prep. with acc.,** *above, over.*

**superō (i),** *surpass, conquer.*

**supersum, -esse, -fuī,** *be over, survive.*

**superus, -a, -um (comp. superior, sup. suprēmus, summus),** *upper, high.*

**suppetō, -petere, -petivī, -petitum,** *be at hand or in store.*

**suppliciter, adv.,** *humbly.*

**supplicium, -ī, n.,** *punishment.*

**suscipio, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [subs, for sub, + capiō] (3),** *undertake, take up; take upon one's self, assume* (i. 3). **bellum suscipere,** *to commence war.*

**suspicio, -ōnis, f.,** *mistrust, suspicion.*

**sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum,** *hold up or out, sustain.*

**suus, -a, -um,** *his, her, its, their.*

## T

**T.**, see **Titus**.

**tabula**, -ae, f., *board, writing-tablet*.

**taceō** (2), *be silent, keep secret*.

**tam**, adv., *so*.

**tamen**, adv., *nevertheless, yet*.

**tandem**, adv., *at length*.

**tantus**, -a, -um, *so great*.

**tēlum**, -ī, n., *dart, missile*.

**temperantia**, -ae, f., *self-control, moderation*.

**temperō** (1), *control, refrain*.

**tēptō** (tentō), -āre, -āvī, -ātum [tento-, p. p. of teneō, *hold*], I. v. a., *handle*. Hence, *try, attempt, make an attempt upon, tempt; iter (try to force)*.

**tempus**, -oris [TEM (*cut*, with root determinative or accidental p) + us], n. (*a cutting*). — Esp., *a division of time, a time, time (in general), a season, an occasion, an emergency, a crisis; tam necessariō tempore, at so critical a moment; omni tempore, at all times, always; in reliquum tempus, for the future; unō tempore, at once*.

**teneō**, tenēre, tenuī, tentum, *hold*.

**terra**, -ae, f., *earth*.

**tertius**, -a, -um, *third*.

**testis**, -is, m. f., *witness*.

**Tigurinus**, -a, -um, *of the Tigurini* (a canton of the Helvetii).

**timeō**, -ēre, -uī, *fear*.

**timor**, -ōris, m., *fear*.

**Titus**, -ī (abbr. T.), m., a Roman name.

**tolerō** (1), *endure, support*.

**tollō**, tollere, sustulī, sublātum, *lift up, take away, destroy*.

**Tolōsātēs**, -um, m., *the Tolosates*.

**tōtus**, -a, -um (gen. -ius, dat. -ī), *all, the whole of, entire*.

**trādō**, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *give over, hand down, surrender*.

**trādūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead across*.

**trāgula**, -ae, f., *a spear, lance of the Gauls and Spaniards, thrown by means of a strap by which it was swung*.

**trāho**, -ere, -xī, -ctum, v. a., *draw, drag*.

**trāns**, prep. with acc., *across*.

**trānseō**, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go across, cross*.

**trānsfigō**, -figere, -fixī, fixum, *thrust through, transfix, pierce*.

**trecentī**, -ae, -a, *three hundred*.

**trēs**, tria, *three*.

**tribuō**, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, *assign, bestow, attribute, ascribe*.

**trīduum**, -ī, n., *three days*.

**trīgintā**, *thirty*.

**triplex**, -icis, *threefold, triple*.

**Tulingī**, -ōrum, m. pl., a German tribe north of the Helvetii, across the Rhine. i. 5, 25, 26, 28, 29.

**tum**, adv., *then, thereupon; be-*

*sides, moreover.* **cum . . . tum,**  
*both . . . and, not only . . . but*  
*also.*  
**tuus, -a, -um,** *thy your.*

## U

**ubi,** *when, where.*  
**ulciscor, ulciscī, ultus sum,**  
*avenge, punish.*  
**ūllus, -a, -um** (gen. -ius, dat. -ī),  
*any.*  
**ulterior, -ius,** comp. adj., *farther.*  
**ūnā,** adv., *at the same time, to-*  
*gether; esp. ūnā cum, together*  
*with.* [abl. f. of **ūnus**.]  
**unde,** adv., *from which place,*  
*whence.*  
**undique (unde),** adv., *from all*  
*parts, on all sides.*  
**ūnus, -a, um** (gen. -ius, dat. -ī),  
*one.*  
**urbs, urbis, f., city.**  
**ut (utī),** conj. (with subj.), *that,*  
*in order that, to; (with indica-*  
*tive) as, when.*  
**uter, -tra, -trum** (gen. -ius, dat.  
 -ī), *which of two, which.*  
**ūtōr, ūtī, ūsus sum, use.**  
**uxor, -ōris, f., wife.**

## V

**vacō** (1), *be vacant or unoccupied.*  
**vadum, -ī, n., ford, shoal.**  
**vagor** (1), *wander.* [avail.  
**valeō** (2), *be strong or powerful,*

**vallum, -ī, n., palisade, rampart.**  
**vāstō** (1), *lay waste, devastate.*  
**vectigal, ālis, n., tax, public**  
*revenue.* [**vectus** (from **veho**).]  
**vel, or . . . vel . . . vel, either**  
*. . . or.*

**veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, come.**  
**Verbigenus, -ī, m., a canton of**  
*the Helvetii. See Helvētius.*  
**verbum, -ī, n., word.**  
**vereor, -ērī, -itus** (2), dep., *fear,*  
*be afraid of; dread, be appre-*  
*hensive.*

**vergō, -ere, —, —** (3), *in-*  
*cline, lie, slope; be situated in a*  
*certain direction.*

**vergobretus, -ī** [Kel. = 'He that  
 renders judgment,' 'Judge'],  
 m., *vergobret*, title of the chief  
 magistrate of the Ædui. i. 16.

**veritus, see vereor.**

**vērō** [abl. of **vērus**], adv., *in*  
*truth, in fact, truly, certainly;*  
*but, but indeed, however.*

**Verucloetius, -ī, m., one of the**  
*Helvetii sent as an ambassa-*  
*dor to Cæsar.*

**vērus, -a, -um, adj., true.**

**Vesontiō, -ōnis, m., chief town of**  
*the Sequani on the Dubis, now*  
*Besançon.*

**vesper, -eris (and -erī), m., eve-**  
*ning.* [ἑσπερος, ἑσπερά.]

**vester, -tra, -trum** [vōs], poss.  
 pron. adj., *your, yours.*

**veterānus, -a, -um, adj., veteran,**  
*experienced; esp. subst. vete-*

*ran*, i.e. a tried soldier opp. to raw recruits. [*vetus*.]

*vetus*, -eris, adj., *ancient, old*.  
[cp. *ĕros* = *year*.]

*vexō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. a.,  
*harass, ravage, overrun* (of a country).

*via*, -ae, f., *way, route*. (See *vexō*.)

*victor*, -ōris, m., *conqueror*; adj., *victorious*. [*vincō*.]

*victōria*, -ae, f., *victory*.

*vīcus*, -ī, m., *village*.

*vidēō*, *vidēre*, *vidī*, *visum*, *see*;  
(in pass.), *be seen, seem*.

*vigilia*, -ae, f., *wakefulness, watch*; as a division (one-fourth) of the night: *dē* (*primā*, *secundā*, *tertiā*) *quartā* *vigiliā*, *about the first, second, etc., watch*; these being respectively 6 P.M. — 9 P.M., 9 P.M. — midnight, midnight — 3 A.M., 3 A.M. — 6 A.M. [*vigil* = *watchful*.]

*vīginti*, card. adj., *twenty*.

*vinciō*, -īre, -nxi, -nctum, v. a.,  
*bind*.

*vīncō*, -ere, *vīcī*, *victum*, v. a.,  
*conquer, surpass*.

*vinctus*, -a, -um, part. of *vinciō*.

*vinculum*, *vinclum*, -ī, n., *chain, bond*. [*vinciō*.]

*virtūs*, -ūtis [*vir*], f., *manliness; courage, bravery, valor, prowess*.

*vis*, acc. *vim*, abl. *vī*, pl. *vīrēs*, -ium, f., *strength; force, violence; influence*. Pl., *physical powers, strength*.

*visus*, see *videō*.

*vīta*, -ae, f., *life*.

*vītō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ī), *shun, avoid, try to escape*.

*vix*, adv., *with difficulty, scarcely*.

*vocō* (ī), *call, summon*.

*Vocontii*, -ōrum, m., *the Vocontii*.

*volō*, *velle*, *voluī*, —, irr., *be willing, wish, desire; mean, intend*.

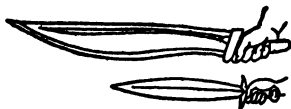
*voluntās*, -ātis [*volō*], f., *will, wish, inclination, desire; goodwill, affection* (i. 19); *consent*.  
*ſuus voluntāte*, *with his consent* (i. 7).

*vōs*, nom. and acc. pl. [*tū*], *you*.

*vulgus* (*volg-*), -ī, n., *the multitude, public, rabble*.

*vulnerō* (*vol-*) (ī), *wound, injure*.

*vulnus* (*vol-*), -neris, n., *a wound*.





# A New Beginners' Greek Book.

By I. F. Frisbee, Ph.D.

This new Beginners' Greek Book is modeled from the standpoint of the *learner*. The pupil is required to *think out* everything for himself.

1. Its paradigms contain only the *most common words* of Xenophon's Anabasis. In their selection preference has been regularly given to *root words*.
2. Its sentences for the exposition of the syntax are taken intact from the Anabasis, and are expressed in the familiar language of the student. Those sentences with inflectional forms are accompanied by brief critical observations, especially suited to young pupils.
3. Its vocabulary contains a special list of the most common words of the Anabasis.
4. Its formation of words deals with the most common words of the pupil's vocabulary.
5. Its inflectional forms are classified according to their natural relations; for example—the vowel declensions are treated together, and the verb is developed with its three voices in the order of those forms most common in Greek.

There are *many other features* besides these which we think will appeal to you.

Those who have used the book in the class room, write us, that—"for *logical arrangement* and *scientific treatment* of the fundamental principles of Greek it has no equal." The lessons are so arranged that even the dullest pupils can make *rapid advancement*. Would you be interested to see a copy of this book? Price, \$1.25.

HINDS & NOBLE, Publishers,

31-33-35 West 15th St.

New York City.

# A New Beginners' Latin Book.

By J. C. Hoch, Ph.D., and O. F. H. Bert, B.S.

This new Beginners' Latin Book is constructed on a plan that will enable the beginner to accomplish the *maximum amount* of work within the *minimum space* of time.

1. Exceptions to rules have, for the most part, been omitted, since the aim is to teach the *essentials* of the language.
2. Many of the sentences are original, while those of more complex construction have been taken from classic authors; all have been chosen with the aim to *interest* the student as well as to *illustrate* the rules of syntax and to pave the way for reading Cæsar.
3. The words which make up the vocabulary are such as will prove to be of value in later study. Five *review lessons* in vocabulary have been introduced.
4. The subjunctive mood and its uses has received most careful treatment.
5. The discussion of conditional sentences by means of a diagram is a *new feature* which teachers will appreciate.

The fables and other stories which are commonly found in other beginners' Latin books are omitted since ample material for reading is supplied in the text.

The lessons are arranged in a *natural* and *methodical order* and are just the *right length* to enable a class to make *rapid progress*.

We shall be glad to send a copy of this book for inspection. Price, \$1.00.

HINDS & NOBLE, Publishers,

31-33-35 West 15th St.

New York City.

# Ethics for High Schools

By AUSTIN BIERBOWER

*Cloth, 390 pages*

*Price \$1.00*

At last a text book has been provided that can be placed in the hands of the pupils regardless of their religious convictions. All references to religious differences have been rigorously avoided.

This treatise is designed for moral training in high schools—presents the subject in lucid un-technical language and aims especially to impress the practical bearing of the moralities in a manner that will convince young people of the reasonableness, the appropriateness, and the practicability of each of the virtues. Read what others say of the book.

"Mr. Bierbower's new book supplies the demand which has long existed in the minds of all thoughtful teachers. It is written in a clear, concise manner, and while eminently suitable for advanced schools and colleges, may yet, with the aid of an intelligent teacher, be made clear to the youngest scholar."

"Absolutely free from dogmatism it presents the virtues and their reasons in a manner that can be comprehended, and shows how they can be practiced alike by all. It can hardly be studied without improving the manners of the student and elevating his character."

"There is not a false note or insipid paragraph in this volume. The author has shown that it is possible to write a text book upon ethics which will be acceptable to every moral thinker, no matter what his creed."

Beside "Bierbower's Ethics for High Schools," we publish "Dewey's Lessons on Morals," adapted for Primary and Intermediate Schools. Price 75 cents. "Mackenzie's Manual of Ethics" for Universities and Colleges. Price \$1.50. We shall be pleased to send you any of these books for inspection with a view to adoption.

**HINDS & NOBLE, Publishers**

**31-33-35 West 15th St.**

**New York City**

# German Texts With Vocabularies

and explanatory footnotes printed on good paper, bound in cloth, price 50c per volume. The following texts are now ready: Schiller's Wilhelm Tell, Schiller's Der Neffe als Onkel, Lessing's Minna von Barnhelm, Lessing's Nathan der Weise, Lessing's Emilia Galotti, Goethe's Hermann und Dorothea, Schiller's Jungfrau von Orleans, Schiller's Maria Stuart

Others in preparation.

What texts will you read next term?  
Would you be interested to see any of the  
above? Correspondence invited.

HINDS & NOBLE, Publishers  
31-33-35 WEST 15TH STREET, NEW YORK CITY

*Schoolbooks of all publishers at one store*

# **A NEW SPELLER**

**5,000 COMMON WORDS  
ONE SHOULD KNOW HOW TO SPELL**

*Price, 25 Cents*

## **Contents**

**Words Met in General Reading and Used in Ordinary  
Conversation**  
**Words of Similar Pronunciation, but of Different Spell-  
ing and Meaning**  
**Words often Confounded either in Spelling, Pronuncia-  
tion or Meaning**  
**Words Spelled the Same, but Differently Accented**  
**Terminations often Confounded**  
**Rules for Correct Spelling**  
**Rules for Capitalization**  
**Rules for Punctuation**  
**Words used in Business**  
**General Abbreviations**  
**Proper Names**  
**Table of Diacritical Marks, etc.**

In cases of introduction we will deliver this book at 20% discount—20 cents net per copy—and will take in exchange Spellers in use and make reasonable allowance for them. Ask us questions.

**HINDS & NOBLE, Publishers**

**31-33-35 WEST 15TH STREET, NEW YORK CITY**

*Schoolbooks of all publishers at one store*

# Who's Who in Mythology?

---

Embarrassing, isn't it, when we run across the name of some god or goddess, in the daily paper, or in a poem, *not to know*? Or perhaps one just fails to enjoy *perfectly* a beautiful painting or engraving or piece of statuary, because ignorant of the *myth* implied.

And how one's memory is *piqued* when one can't recall the story, though once familiar! How the matter "sticks in the mind," pestering us until it all comes back to us; and *then* we're annoyed to think we couldn't recall the connection on the instant, and we wish there were some way to be saved all the pothor.

Well, there *is* a way!

Just have at hand a convenient little book that gives the name of every god and goddess, or hero whose name is ever likely to be broached. Not a *tome*, with encyclopædic fullness of description! No! But just an alphabetical list, as it were, for ready reference, enabling one to find and locate the personage *instantly*; and quite enough description to enable one to connect with the *story*—just enough to rescue one from seeming so distressingly *ignorant*, as if one had never even heard of Pallas or Aphrodite, or Thalia, or Ariadne. Can *you* tell as many, say, as *four* different but quite familiar names of Minerva?

*Just such* a book is published by the undersigned. The title of it is

## 1000 MYTHOLOGICAL CHARACTERS BRIEFLY DESCRIBED

It is neatly bound in cloth; is smallish, and of convenient shape. And 'tis not so very high-priced—only

SEVENTY-FIVE CENTS POSTPAID

---

HINDS & NOBLE, Publishers of

1000 Classical Allusions Briefly Explained

Does for the places, persons, and things of antiquity what "Who's Who" does for the gods, the heroes, and the myths. 75 cts.

New York City

Schoolbooks of all publishers at one store.

*"No books published this year will be more widely introduced into our Schools than Mrs. Dewey's Lessons on Manners, and Lessons on Morals, published by Hinds and Noble, New York." Price 75 cents each.*

---

"Better adapted for use in our schools than any other books on the subject I have ever examined."

"The didactical suggestions and illustrative incidents are so beautifully and harmoniously blended that the pupil is quite as pleased with the formal teaching as with the illustrative examples."

"The books should be given a place in every Grammar School, High School, and Private School in the country."

"The most practical rules on Morals and Manners that I have found in any work on these subjects. I hope their influence may be widely extended."

"It is the essence of Morals, and, in the hands of truly moral teachers, it will be a valuable aid in developing the highest aim of education—a high moral character."

"Books that are suggestive in matter, and well ordered and helpful in arrangement. The chapter on 'Manners in the School Room' in the 'Lessons on Manners,' if well taught, will solve in advance many of the problems daily arising in school discipline."

*Unsolicited Opinions.*

**What Shall I Do?** Nature does not give to the ordinary mortal a specific label of his calling, but implants certain tendencies which are not so positive as suggestive. Sometimes the latent force lies asleep for years, until something happens to call it forth. And then, as a rule, it is merely a bent, a bias which leads a man on, step by step, gives him as much encouragement as he needs, but does not in its early stages assume the form of a positive

vocation. It seems at first largely a matter of faith; and thus the young disciple finds it hard to explain to others the inward urging which he feels toward some particular vocation; and perhaps he is obliged to bear some criticism for his reluctant attitude toward other, perhaps more lucrative, callings. Even he himself will at times feel a sense of impotence and despair, and have fears that he is on a false trail. But again the suggestion—the whispers of a man's true vocation will be heard; and in spite of himself he picks up the thread and presses onward.

If parents would seek for their children, not that which seems best or most expedient for them to do, but that which they can do best, we should not have so many jaded, joyless workers.

No one knows so well as the teacher how dependent upon her counsel a large majority of her pupils are for their choice as to an occupation.

The book has been compiled with two thoughts in mind:—(1) to turn the attention of the pupils toward their life work; (2) to enable them to reach out into what might seem impossible without this detailed information.

*Could any better book be placed in the hands of your pupils for supplementary reading, than this? Special discount for class supplies.*

No one knows so well as the teacher how dependent upon her counsel a large number of her pupils are, for their choice as to an occupation.

The book has been compiled with two thoughts in mind—(1) to turn the attention of the pupils toward their life-work; (2) to enable them to reach out into what might seem impossible without this detailed information. Price \$1.00.

Send for a sample copy.

**HINDS & NOBLE, Publishers**

**31-33-35 West 15th St.**

**New York City**



*this series contains the only two-part Greek Lexicon.*

# Dictionaries

## Classic Series

Especially planned and carefully produced to meet the requirements of students and teachers in colleges, high schools and academies. Modern scholarship, modern typography, modern arrangement. Beautifully legible, clear type. Durably bound in half morocco in a style particularly attractive. Size 8x5 1/2 inches.

German-English—English-German. 1112 pages.

Price, \$2.00.

French-English—English-French. 1122 pages.

Price, \$2.00.

Italian-English—English-Italian. 1187 pages.

Price, \$2.00.

Latin-English—English-Latin. 941 pages.

Price, \$2.00.

Greek-English—English-Greek. 1056 pages.

Price \$2.00; This is the *only* Greek Lexicon containing *both* Greek-English and English-Greek parts in one volume. Heretofore, a good Greek-English Lexicon, *separate*, has cost as much or more than this two-part Lexicon.

The English-Greek Dictionary,

being the Second Part of the above, bound separately, but published at \$1.00.

New-Testament Lexicon.

*Greek-English.* An entirely new work embodying notable improvements upon all similar works. Handy-volume size. Price, \$1.00.

Dealing as we do exclusively in School and College Books, we have discovered a wide demand from Teachers and the Student Public for a *series* of dictionaries, uniform in size, up to the times in point of contents, authoritative while modern as regards scholarship, instantly accessible in respect to arrangement, of best quality as to typography and paper, and in a binding at once elegant and durable. *That the volumes in this series are the best in all these respects, is attested by their adoption and continued use by hundreds of the influential colleges and preparatory schools of this country and Canada.*

Hinds & Noble, Publishers

31-33-35 West 15th Street

New York City





**Carlson Burr.**

**Carlson Burr.**

**Carlson Burr.**

**Carlson Burr.**

**Carlson Burr.**

**Carlson Burr.**



*Carlson Burr.*

*Carlson Burr.*

*Carlson Burr.*

*Carlson Burr.*

*Carlson Burr.*

*Carlson Burr.*



*Carlton Burr.*

*Carlton Burr.*

*Carlton Burr.*

*Carlton Burr.*

*Carlton Burr.*

*Carlton Burr.*





*Carlton Burr.*

*Carlton Burr.*

*Carlton Burr.*

*Carlton Burr.*

*Carlton Burr.*

*Carlton Burr.*

